



▶ Administrator's Guide
for Polycom® HDX™ Systems

Trademark Information

Polycom®, the Polycom “Triangles” logo, and the names and marks associated with Polycom’s products are trademarks and/or service marks of Polycom, Inc., and are registered and/or common-law marks in the United States and various other countries.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Patent Information

The accompanying product is protected by one or more U.S. and foreign patents and/or pending patent applications held by Polycom, Inc.

Customer Feedback

We are constantly working to improve the quality of our documentation, and we would appreciate your feedback. Please send email to videodocumentation@polycom.com.

© 2010 Polycom, Inc. All rights reserved.

Polycom, Inc.
4750 Willow Road
Pleasanton, CA 94588-2708
USA

No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of Polycom, Inc. Under the law, reproducing includes translating into another language or format.

As between the parties, Polycom, Inc., retains title to and ownership of all proprietary rights with respect to the software contained within its products. The software is protected by United States copyright laws and international treaty provision. Therefore, you must treat the software like any other copyrighted material (e.g., a book or sound recording).

Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate. Polycom, Inc., is not responsible for printing or clerical errors. Information in this document is subject to change without notice.

About This Guide

The *Administrator's Guide for Polycom HDX Systems* is for administrators who need to configure, customize, manage, and troubleshoot Polycom® HDX™ systems. The guide covers the Polycom HDX™ 9000 series, Polycom HDX™ 8000 series, Polycom HDX™ 7000 series, Polycom HDX™ 6000 series, and Polycom HDX™ 4000 series systems.

Please read the Polycom HDX system documentation before you install or operate the system. The following related documents for Polycom HDX systems are available at www.polycom.com/videodocumentation:

- *Setting Up the System*, which describes how to set up the hardware
- *User's Guide for Polycom HDX Systems*, which describes how to perform video conferencing tasks
- Setup Sheets for your optional hardware
- Release Notes
- *Integrator's Reference Manual for Polycom HDX Systems*, which provides cable information and API command descriptions

For support or service, please contact your Polycom distributor or go to Polycom Support at www.polycom.com/support.

Polycom recommends that you record the serial number and option key of your Polycom HDX system here for future reference. The serial number for the system is printed on the unit.

System Serial Number: _____

Option Key: _____

Contents

1 Introducing the Polycom HDX Systems

Polycom HDX Systems	1-1
Polycom HDX 9000 Series Systems	1-1
Polycom HDX 8000 Series Systems	1-2
Polycom HDX 7000 Series Systems	1-2
Polycom HDX 6000 Series Systems	1-2
Polycom HDX 4000 Series Systems	1-3
Setting Up Your System Hardware	1-3
Positioning the System	1-3
Positioning the Polycom HDX 9000 Series Systems	1-3
Positioning the Polycom HDX 8000 Series, Polycom HDX 7000 Series, or Polycom HDX 6000 Series Systems	1-4
Positioning the Polycom HDX 4000 Series Systems	1-5
Powering On and Off	1-6
Powering On the Polycom HDX 9000 Series Systems	1-6
Polycom HDX 9000 Series Indicator Light	1-7
Powering On the Polycom HDX 8000 Series, Polycom HDX 7000 Series, or Polycom HDX 6000 Series Systems	1-7
Polycom HDX 8000 Series, Polycom HDX 7000 Series, and Polycom HDX 6000 Series Indicator Light	1-8
Powering On the Polycom HDX 4000 Series Systems	1-8
Polycom HDX 4000 Series Indicator Lights	1-9
Configuring the Polycom HDX System	1-10
Setup Wizard	1-10
Admin Settings	1-11

2 Networks

Getting the Network Ready	2-1
Connecting to the LAN	2-1
LAN Status Lights	2-2
Configuring LAN Properties	2-2
Configuring IP Settings	2-7
Specifying H.323 Settings	2-7
Configuring the System to Use a Gatekeeper	2-7
Configuring Integration with Avaya Networks	2-9
Configuring the System to Use a Gateway	2-10
Specifying SIP Settings	2-12

Configuring SIP Settings for Integration with Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007	2-13
Specifying Quality of Service	2-15
Polycom Video Error Concealment and Dynamic Bandwidth	2-15
Quality of Service Settings	2-16
Configuring the System for Use with a Firewall or NAT	2-17
Firewall Settings	2-17
H.460 NAT Firewall Traversal	2-19
Connecting Polycom HDX Systems to ISDN or Other Networks	2-20
Quad BRI Network Interface Status Lights	2-21
PRI Network Interface Status Lights	2-22
Serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530 Network Interface Status Lights	2-22
Configuring ISDN and Other Network Interface Settings	2-23
Configuring the BRI Network Interface	2-23
Configuring the PRI Network Interface	2-24
Configuring the Serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530 Network Interface	2-27
Connecting to an Analog Phone Line	2-29
Configuring Telephony	2-30
Configuring Call Preferences	2-31
Configuring Dialing Order Settings	2-35

3 Monitors and Cameras

Connecting Monitors	3-1
Connecting Monitors to Polycom HDX 9000 Series Systems	3-1
Connecting Monitors to Polycom HDX 8000 Series or Polycom HDX 7000 Series Systems	3-2
Connecting a Monitor to Polycom HDX 6000 Series Systems	3-2
Using a Polycom HDX 4000 Series Monitor with a Computer	3-3
Configuring Monitor Settings	3-3
Using Dual Monitor Emulation	3-9
Examples of Dual Monitor Emulation	3-9
Using Dual Monitor Emulation in a Call	3-10
Configuring Multipoint Viewing Modes	3-10
Adjusting the Monitor's Color Balance, Sharpness, and Brightness	3-11
Preventing Monitor Burn-In	3-12
Connecting Cameras	3-13
Connecting Cameras to Polycom HDX 9000 Series Systems	3-14
Connecting Cameras to Polycom HDX 8000 Series Systems	3-15
Connecting Cameras to Polycom HDX 7000 Series Systems	3-16
Connecting Cameras to Polycom HDX 6000 Series Systems	3-16
Connecting Cameras to Polycom HDX 4000 Series Systems	3-16
Configuring Camera Settings and Video Quality Options	3-17
Configuring Advanced Camera Settings	3-23
Configuring Camera Presets	3-24
Experiencing High-Definition Video Conferencing	3-25
Sending Video in High Definition	3-26
Receiving and Displaying Video in High Definition	3-26

HD and SD Multipoint Calls	3-27
----------------------------------	------

4 Microphones and Speakers

Connecting Audio Input	4-1
Connecting Audio Input to Polycom HDX 9000 Series Systems	4-1
Connecting Audio Input to Polycom HDX 8000 Series Systems	4-2
Connecting Audio Input to Polycom HDX 7000 Series Systems	4-2
Connecting Audio Input to Polycom HDX 6000 Series Systems	4-2
Connecting Devices to the Polycom HDX Microphone Input	4-3
Connecting Polycom HDX Table or Ceiling Microphones	4-3
Using the Polycom EagleEye View Microphones	4-3
Connecting a Polycom SoundStation IP 7000 Phone	4-3
Connecting Devices to the Polycom HDX 9000 Series Microphone Input	4-4
Connecting Devices to the Polycom HDX 8000 Series Microphone Input	4-5
Connecting Devices to the Polycom HDX 7000 Series Microphone Input	4-6
Connecting Devices to the Polycom HDX 6000 Series Microphone Input	4-6
Connecting Devices to the Polycom HDX 4000 Series Microphone Input	4-7
Placing Polycom Microphones to Send Stereo from Your Site	4-8
Polycom Microphone Lights	4-9
Connecting Non-Polycom Microphones or a Mixer to a Polycom HDX System	4-9
Connecting Audio Output	4-10
Connecting Speakers to Polycom HDX 9000 Series Systems	4-11
Connecting Speakers to Polycom HDX 8000 Series or Polycom HDX 7000 Series Systems	4-11
Connecting Speakers to Polycom HDX 6000 Series Systems	4-11
Connecting Speakers or Headphones to Polycom HDX 4000 Series Systems	4-12
Placing Speakers to Play Stereo from Far Sites	4-12
Setting the Speaker Volume	4-13
Configuring Audio Settings	4-14
General Audio Settings	4-14
StereoSurround Settings	4-18
Audio Meters	4-19
Testing StereoSurround	4-20
Polycom HDX System Settings for a Polycom Vortex Mixer	4-20
Settings for Non-Polycom Microphones	4-21

5 Content and Closed Captions

Connecting VCR/DVDs	5-1
Configuring VCR/DVD Player Settings	5-1
Playing a Videotape or DVD	5-1

Recording a Call to Videotape or DVD	5-2
Connecting Computers to Polycom HDX Systems	5-3
Configuring Content Sharing	5-3
Configuring Content Display with People+Content IP	5-3
Configuring People on Content™	5-4
Setting Up the Room for People on Content	5-5
Enabling and Calibrating People on Content on the System	5-5
Configuring Closed Captioning	5-6
Via a Dial-Up Connection to the Systems' RS-232 Serial Port	5-7
Via the System's Serial RS-232 Port	5-8
Via the Polycom HDX Web Interface	5-8

6 Calling and Answering

Configuring Call Settings	6-1
Setting the Call Answering Mode	6-3
Configuring Multipoint Calling	6-3
Entering a Multipoint Option Key	6-4
Configuring the Conference on Demand Feature	6-4
Including Multiple Sites in a Cascaded Call	6-5
Configuring Directory Settings	6-6
Creating a Localized System Name with the Polycom HDX Web Interface ..	6-6
Managing Directories with the Polycom HDX Web Interface	6-7
Configuring the Global Directory	6-8
Directory Groups	6-12
Global Directory Groups	6-13
Local Directory Groups	6-13
Polycom Conferencing for Microsoft Outlook	6-16

7 System Location, Appearance, and Tones

Configuring Regional Settings	7-1
Customizing the Home Screen	7-3
Displaying Speed Dial Entries	7-6
Adding Marquee Text	7-6
Customizing Camera Names and Icons	7-7
Screen Savers	7-7
Adding Screen Saver Text	7-7
Adding a Screen Saver Logo	7-8

8 Security

Screens that Require a Password for Access	8-1
Configuring Security Options	8-2
Configuring Security Mode	8-5
Enabling a Security Profile	8-7
Enabling AES Encryption	8-7

	Configuring Encryption Settings for Integration with Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007	8-8
	Setting Password Policies	8-9
	Setting the Room and Remote Access Passwords	8-10
	Setting an Account Lockout	8-11
	Managing User Access to Settings and Features	8-12
	Setting up Log Management	8-13
9	Managing the System Remotely	
	Using the Polycom HDX Web Interface	9-1
	Accessing the Polycom HDX Web Interface	9-2
	Monitoring a Room or Call with the Polycom HDX Web Interface	9-2
	Managing System Profiles with the Polycom HDX Web Interface	9-3
	Sending a Message	9-4
	Configuring Global Services	9-4
	Viewing the Management Servers List	9-5
	Requiring an Account Number for Calls	9-5
	Adding Information for the Global Management System Administrator	9-5
	Requesting Technical Support from the Global Management System Administrator	9-6
	Setting Up SNMP	9-6
	Downloading MIBs	9-6
	Configuring for SNMP Management	9-7
	Using a Provisioning Service	9-8
	Enabling or Disabling the Provisioning Service	9-8
	Provisioning Service Settings	9-9
	Keeping your Software Current	9-10
10	Control Devices	
	Configuring Remote Control Behavior	10-1
	Configuring the Remote Control Channel ID	10-2
	Configuring the Remote to Control a Recording Device	10-3
	Connecting Control and Accessibility Equipment	10-3
	Connecting Touch-Panel Controls	10-4
	Connecting IR Sensors to Polycom HDX Systems	10-4
	Configuring RS-232 Serial Port Settings	10-5
11	Statistics and Diagnostics	
	Diagnostic Screens	11-1
	System Status	11-2
	Server Status	11-2
	Call Statistics	11-3
	Network	11-4
	Video	11-4

Audio	11-5
Reset or Restart System	11-6
Recent Calls	11-6
Call Detail Report (CDR)	11-7
Information in the CDR	11-7
Call Detail Report Archives	11-10
System Logs	11-10
Downloading System Logs from the Polycom HDX Web Interface	11-11
System Log Settings in the Polycom HDX Web Interface	11-11

12 Troubleshooting

Placing a Test Call	12-1
Enabling Basic Mode	12-2
Using the Restore Button	12-2
Restoring Configuration	12-3
Performing a Factory Restore	12-4
Deleting Files	12-4
Changing the Video Format	12-5
How to Contact Technical Support	12-5
Polycom Solution Support	12-6

Regulatory NoticesRegulatory Notices

A System Back Panel Views

Video Inputs and Outputs	A-1
Polycom HDX 9006	A-1
Polycom HDX 9004	A-2
Polycom HDX 9001 and Polycom HDX 9002	A-2
Polycom HDX 8000 Series System	A-3
Polycom HDX 7000 Series System	A-3
Polycom HDX 6000 Series System	A-4
Polycom HDX 4000 Series System	A-4
Audio Inputs and Outputs	A-5
Polycom HDX 9006	A-5
Polycom HDX 9004	A-5
Polycom HDX 9001 and Polycom HDX 9002	A-6
Polycom HDX 8000 Series System	A-6
Polycom HDX 7000 Series System	A-7
Polycom HDX 6000 Series System	A-7
Polycom HDX 4000 Series System	A-8
Network/Power/Control Inputs and Outputs	A-8
Polycom HDX 9006	A-8
Polycom HDX 9004	A-9
Polycom HDX 9001 and Polycom HDX 9002	A-9

Polycom HDX 8000 Series System	A-10
Polycom HDX 7000 Series System	A-10
Polycom HDX 6000 Series System	A-11
Polycom HDX 4000 Series System	A-11

B Port Usage

C Call Speeds and Resolutions

Point-to-Point Dialing Speeds	C-1
Multipoint Dialing Speeds	C-1
Call Speeds and Resolutions	C-4
SD Systems (NTSC)	C-4
HD 720p Systems (NTSC)	C-5
HD 1080p Systems (NTSC)	C-6
H.264 High Profile	C-7
High Profile on Polycom HDX 6000 HD	C-7
High Profile on Polycom HDX 7000 HD, Polycom HDX 8000 HD, and Polycom HDX 9006	C-8
Maximum Resolution (720p) on Polycom HDX 7000 Systems	C-9
Maximum Resolution (1080p) on Polycom HDX 6000 Systems	C-10

D Codes for Remote Control Recording Device Buttons

DVD Player Codes	D-1
DVD Recorder Codes	D-2
VCR Device Codes	D-3
PVR Device Codes	D-5

Index Index-1

Introducing the Polycom HDX Systems

Your Polycom HDX video conferencing system is a state-of-the-art visual collaboration tool. With crisp, clean video and crystal-clear sound, Polycom HDX systems provide natural video conferencing interaction through the most advanced video communications technology.

Polycom HDX Systems

For technical specifications and detailed descriptions of features available for Polycom HDX models, please refer to the product literature available at www.polycom.com.

Polycom HDX 9000 Series Systems



The Polycom HDX 9000 series provides high-definition (HD) voice, video, and content for medium to large conference rooms. The Polycom HDX 9000 series provides integrator-class connectors and supports multiple video and audio sources. These solutions allow integrators to create specialized and unique, real-time video environments for their customers. The Polycom HDX 9000 series includes several models: Polycom HDX 9006, Polycom HDX 9004, Polycom HDX 9002, and Polycom HDX 9001.

The Polycom HDX 9006 systems can send and receive wide-screen, high-definition (HD) video in point-to-point and multipoint calls in 1080p video.

The Polycom HDX 9004 and Polycom HDX 9002 systems can send and receive wide-screen, high-definition (HD) video in point-to-point and multipoint calls. The Polycom HDX 9001 sends and receives up to standard-definition (SD) video.

Polycom HDX 8000 Series Systems



The Polycom HDX 8000 series provides high-definition (HD) voice, video, and content for medium to large conference rooms. These systems incorporate leading-edge design with performance, flexibility, and capabilities, making them the optimal solution for meeting spaces in any organization. The Polycom HDX 8000 series systems can send and receive wide-screen, HD 720p video in point-to-point and multipoint calls. Polycom HDX 8000 series systems with the 1080p Resolution option installed can send and receive full HD (1080p) video.

The Polycom HDX 8000 series systems ship with a Polycom EagleEye™ camera, Polycom HDX microphones, and a Polycom HDX remote control. Bundles including displays and furniture are also available.

Polycom HDX 7000 Series Systems



The Polycom HDX 7000 series provides voice, video, and content for small to medium conference rooms. These systems incorporate leading-edge design with performance, flexibility, and capabilities, making them the optimal solution for meeting spaces in any organization.

The Polycom HDX 7000 series has two models: the Polycom HDX 7000 system and the Polycom HDX 7000 HD system. The Polycom HDX 7000 system is an SD system that sends and receives video in SD resolutions. The Polycom HDX 7000 HD system is an HD system that sends and receives HD video. Both models include a Polycom EagleEye HD camera, Polycom HDX microphone, and a Polycom HDX remote control. Polycom HDX 7000 series systems with the 1080p Resolution option installed can send and receive full HD (1080p) video.

Bundles including displays and furniture are also available.

Polycom HDX 6000 Series Systems



The Polycom HDX 6000 series provides voice, video, and content for small to medium conference rooms. These systems incorporate leading-edge design with performance, flexibility, and capabilities, making them the optimal solution for meeting spaces in any organization.

The Polycom HDX 6000 HD system is an HD system that sends and receives HD video. Polycom HDX 6000 series systems with the 1080p Resolution option installed can send and receive full HD (1080p) video.

The Polycom HDX 6000 series systems ship with a Polycom EagleEye™ camera, a Polycom HDX microphone, and a Polycom HDX remote control. Bundles including displays and furniture are also available.

Polycom HDX 4000 Series Systems



The Polycom HDX 4000 series provides the ultimate in desktop video conferencing, designed to allow today's professionals to be more productive and effective right from their office. With a 20.1" LCD screen, powerful stereo speakers, and sleek design, these systems are much more than communications devices; they are also fully functional monitors for your PC or MAC. The Polycom HDX 4000 series has two models: the Polycom HDX 4000 system and the Polycom HDX 4000 HD system. The Polycom HDX 4000 system is an SD system that sends and receives video in 4CIF/4SIF resolutions. The Polycom HDX 4000 HD system is an HD system that sends and receives HD 720p video in point-to-point and multipoint calls. Both models include a built-in PTZ (Pan Tilt Zoom) camera, four speakers, and dual microphones.

Setting Up Your System Hardware

This manual provides information to supplement the setup sheets provided with your system and its optional components. A printed copy of the system setup sheet is provided with each Polycom HDX system. PDF versions of the system setup sheets are available at www.polycom.com/videodocumentation.

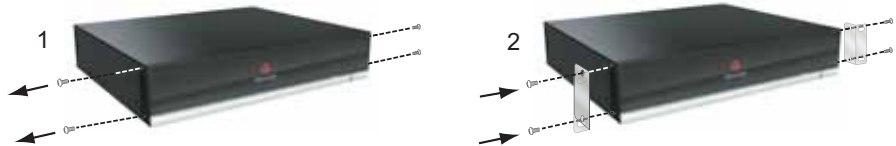
Positioning the System

Positioning the Polycom HDX 9000 Series Systems

Polycom HDX 9000 series systems are designed to be placed on a tabletop or in an equipment rack.

To position the system:

- 1 Install the mounting brackets on the system if you need to mount it in an equipment rack, or install the self-adhesive feet if you will place the system on a table or shelf.



- 2 Place the system in the desired location. Position the system so that the camera does not face toward a window or other source of bright light. Leave enough space to connect the cables easily. Place the camera and display together so that people at your site face the camera when they are looking at the display.



Positioning the Polycom HDX 8000 Series, Polycom HDX 7000 Series, or Polycom HDX 6000 Series Systems

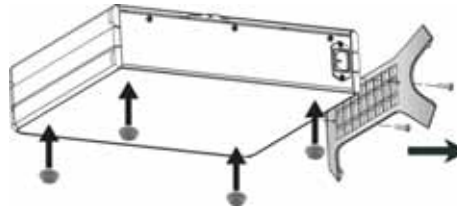
Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, and Polycom HDX 6000 series systems can be set up in multiple ways. When used with furniture such as a pedestal or wall mount, the system fits into a bracket on the back of the display. The system can also be placed in a cart or on a table.

To position the system:

- >> Position the system so that the camera does not face toward a window or other source of bright light. Leave enough space to connect the cables easily. Place the camera and display together so that people at your site face the camera when they are looking at the display.



If you need to position the system horizontally, remove the stand and install the self-adhesive feet.



Caution. Risk of Electric Shock. To reduce the risk of personal injury or damage to the equipment, do not use screws longer than those supplied (M4x16, 8.00 mm maximum head diameter) to reconnect the stand to the system.

Positioning the Polycom HDX 4000 Series Systems

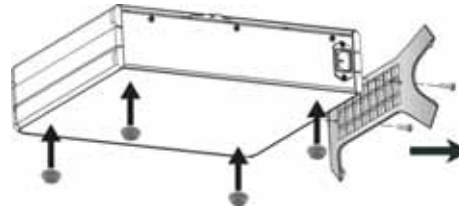
The Polycom HDX 4000 series systems are personal video conferencing systems for the desktop.

To position the system:

- 1 Place the Polycom HDX 4000 series monitor on the desktop, leaving enough space to connect the cables easily. Position the system so that the camera does not face toward a window or other source of bright light.
- 2 Place the Polycom HDX 4000 series system either under the desk, or on the desk next to the display. The cables that connect the display to the system can be hidden in the monitor stand, providing clean cable management.



If you need to position the system horizontally, remove the stand and install the self-adhesive feet.



Caution. Risk of Electric Shock. To reduce the risk of personal injury or damage to the equipment, do not use screws longer than those supplied (M4x16, 8.00 mm maximum head diameter) to reconnect the stand to the system.

Powering On and Off


Connect power and power on the system after you have connected all of the equipment that you will use with it. Make sure that the system is powered off before you connect devices to it.



Caution. In order to avoid corrupting the file system, always power off a Polycom HDX system using the power button on the system or the remote control. After turning the power off in this way, wait at least 15 seconds before you unplug the system from its power source. This helps ensure that the system powers off correctly.


Powering On the Polycom HDX 9000 Series Systems

To power on the Polycom HDX 9000 series, do one of the following:

- Press the  power button on the remote control.
- Press the power switch on the front of the system.

The Polycom splash screen is displayed within about 10 seconds.

To power off the Polycom HDX 9000 series, do one of the following:

- Press and hold the  power button on the remote control for 2 seconds.
- Press and hold the power switch on the front of the system for 2 seconds.

After turning the power off in this way, wait at least 15 seconds before you unplug the system from its power source.

Polycom HDX 9000 Series Indicator Light

The following figure shows the location of the power switch and indicator light.




The indicator light on the front of the Polycom HDX 9000 series system provides this information:

Indicator Light	System Status
Off	System is powered off.
Steady green light	System is initializing. System is awake.
Blinking green light	System received an IR (Infrared) signal.
Steady amber light	System is asleep.
Alternating green and amber lights	System is in software update mode. System is in factory restore mode.


Powering On the Polycom HDX 8000 Series, Polycom HDX 7000 Series, or Polycom HDX 6000 Series Systems

To power on the Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, or Polycom HDX 6000 series system, do one of the following:

- Press the  power button on the remote control.
- Press the power switch on the front of the system.

The Polycom splash screen is displayed within about 10 seconds.

To power off the Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, or Polycom HDX 6000 series system, do one of the following:

- Press and hold the  power button on the remote control for 2 seconds.
- Press and hold the power switch on the front of the system for 2 seconds.

After turning the power off in this way, wait at least 15 seconds before you unplug the system from its power source.

Polycom HDX 8000 Series, Polycom HDX 7000 Series, and Polycom HDX 6000 Series Indicator Light

The indicator light on the front of the Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, and Polycom HDX 6000 series system provides this information:

Indicator Light	System Status
Off	System is without power.
Steady blue light	System is initializing. System is awake.
Blinking blue light	System received an IR signal.
Steady amber light	System is asleep.
Alternating blue and amber lights	System is in software update mode. System is in factory restore mode.

Powering On the Polycom HDX 4000 Series Systems

To power on the Polycom HDX 4000 series, do one of the following:

- Press the power button on the front of the system.
- Press the power button on the side of the monitor.

The system powers on and displays near video or your computer desktop within about 60 seconds.

To power off the Polycom HDX 4000 series monitor:

- >> Press the power button on the side of the monitor.

The monitor enters standby mode. The system stays powered on.

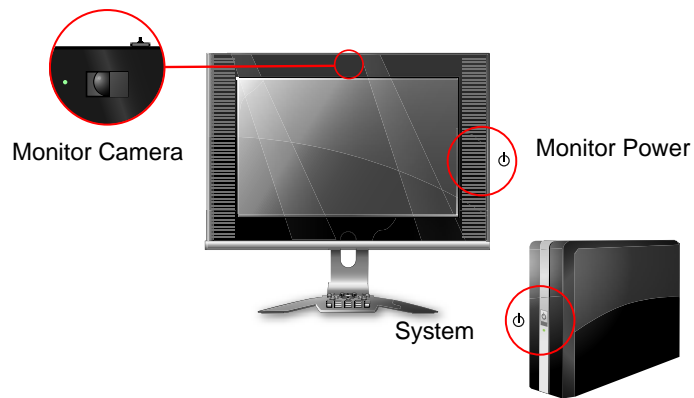
To power off the Polycom HDX 4000 series, do one of the following:

- Press and hold the power button on the side of the monitor.
The monitor and the system power off.
- Press and hold the power button on the front of the system.
The monitor and the system power off.

After turning the power off in this way, wait at least 15 seconds before you unplug the system from its power source.

Polycom HDX 4000 Series Indicator Lights

The following figure shows the location of the power switches and indicator lights.



The indicator light on the front of the Polycom HDX 4000 series system provides this information:

Indicator Light (System)	Status
Off	System is without power.
Steady blue light	System is initializing. System is awake.
Blinking blue light	System received an IR signal.
Steady amber light	System is asleep.
Alternating blue and amber lights	System is in software update mode. System is in factory restore mode.

The indicator light on the side of the Polycom HDX 4000 series monitor provides this information:

Indicator Light (Monitor Power)	Status
Off	Monitor is powered off.
Steady blue light	Monitor is powered on.
Steady amber light	Monitor is in standby mode.
Rapidly blinking light	Monitor is not connected correctly to the system. Verify that the monitor is connected correctly according to the setup sheet you received with the system.

The indicator light next to the Polycom HDX 4000 series built-in camera provides this information:

Indicator Light (Monitor Camera)	Status
Off	System is not in a call.
Steady green light	System is in a call.
Blinking green light	System is in a call with the privacy shutter closed.

Configuring the Polycom HDX System

Setup Wizard



When making a connection from a web browser to configure the HDX system, always enter the address of the HDX system in one of the following formats: `https://hostname` or `https://10.11.12.13`.

Using the HTTPS protocol ensures that the configuration of all login credentials (such as user names and passwords) are transmitted using an encrypted channel. This includes those credentials used to communicate with third-party systems on your network. Using the HTTPS protocol severely limits the ability of anyone on the network to discover these credentials.

When you power on your system for the first time, the setup wizard detects the system's IP and ISDN connections and leads you through the minimum configuration steps required to place a call.



If you cannot see the user interface on the system's monitor, refer to [Changing the Video Format](#) on page 12-5.

The setup wizard allows you to set an Admin ID and password, which allows you to limit access to the Admin Settings. The default Admin ID is “admin” and the default admin room password is the 14-digit system serial number from the **System Information** screen or the back of the system.



Make sure you can recall the room password if you set one. If you forget the password, you must use the restore button to run the setup wizard again in order to access the Admin Settings and reset the password. For more information, refer to [Using the Restore Button](#) on page 12-2.

You can run the setup wizard or view the configuration screens in either of these two ways.

- **In the room with the system** — Use the remote control to navigate the screens and enter information. You can use the number pad on the remote control to enter text.
- **From a remote location** — Use a web browser to access the Polycom HDX web interface. For more information about using the web interface, refer to [Accessing the Polycom HDX Web Interface](#) on page 9-2.

The setup wizard is available during initial setup, after a software update or system reset with system settings deleted, or after using the restore button.

Admin Settings

After you run the setup wizard, you can view or change the system's configuration by going to the Admin Settings in the system's local interface or web interface.



When making a connection from a web browser to configure the HDX system, always enter the address of the HDX system in one of the following formats: `https://hostname` or `https://10.11.12.13`.

Using the HTTPS protocol ensures that the configuration of all login credentials (such as user names and passwords) are transmitted using an encrypted channel. This includes those credentials used to communicate with third-party systems on your network. Using the HTTPS protocol severely limits the ability of anyone on the network to discover these credentials.

If you enable a security profile in the setup wizard, certain configuration settings are set and controlled automatically.

If you enable a provisioning service, any settings provisioned by the Polycom Converged Management Application™ (CMA™) system may be displayed as read-only settings in the Polycom HDX system interface. For more information about automatic provisioning, refer to the Polycom CMA system documentation on the Polycom web site.

Networks

This guide covers network types used worldwide. Please note that not all network types are available in all countries.



When making a connection from a web browser to configure the HDX system, always enter the address of the HDX system in one of the following formats: `https://hostname` or `https://10.11.12.13`.

Using the HTTPS protocol ensures that the configuration of all login credentials (such as user names and passwords) are transmitted using an encrypted channel. This includes those credentials used to communicate with third-party systems on your network. Using the HTTPS protocol severely limits the ability of anyone on the network to discover these credentials.

Getting the Network Ready

Before you begin configuring the network options, you must make sure your network is ready for video conferencing.

To begin, refer to the *Network Planning Worksheets for Video Conferencing* document, available on the Polycom web site. This document contains information you need to prepare your network, such as worksheets that will help you order ISDN.

Polycom also offers contract high-definition readiness services. For more information, please contact your Polycom distributor.

Connecting to the LAN

You must connect the system to a LAN to:

- Make H.323 or SIP calls
- Use a Global Directory Server
- Register with a management system

- Access the web interface
- Use People+Content™ IP

LAN Status Lights

The LAN connector on the Polycom HDX 9000 series and Polycom HDX 6000 series has two lights to indicate connection status and traffic:

Indicator Light	Connection Status
Left light off	No 1000Base-T connection.
Left light green	1000Base-T connection. The light goes off each time a frame is transmitted or received.
Right light off	No 10/100Base-T connection.
Right light green	100Base-T connection. The light goes off each time a frame is transmitted or received.
Right light yellow	10Base-T connection. The light goes off each time a frame is transmitted or received.

The LAN connector on the Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, and Polycom HDX 4000 series systems has two lights to indicate connection status and traffic:

Indicator Light	Connection Status
Left light off	No 100Base-T connection.
Left light green	100Base-T connection. The light goes off each time a frame is transmitted or received.
Right light off	No 10Base-T connection.
Right light green	10Base-T connection. The light goes off each time a frame is transmitted or received.

Configuring LAN Properties

In IPv4/IPv6 hybrid networks, the system tries to place calls using the IPv6 address first. If that fails, the system tries to place the call using the IPv4 address.


Points to Note about IPv6-only Network Limitations:


- You cannot configure a Polycom Global Directory Server address.
- You must disable IP H.323 in the Call Preference menu.
- The Polycom Global Management System™, Polycom ReadManager® SE200, and Polycom CMA system will not be able to connect to the Polycom HDX system.

To configure LAN properties:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > LAN Properties**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the LAN Properties screen:

Setting	Description
IP Address (IPv4)	<p>Specifies how the system obtains an IP address.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Obtain IP address automatically — Select if the system gets an IP address from the DHCP server on the LAN. • Enter IP address manually — Select if the IP address will not be assigned automatically. <p>Changing this setting causes the system to restart.</p>
IP Address	<p>If the system obtains its IP address automatically, this area displays the IP address currently assigned to the system.</p> <p>If you selected Enter IP Address Manually, enter the IP address here. Changing the IP address causes the system to restart.</p>
Subnet Mask	<p>Displays the subnet mask currently assigned to the system.</p> <p>If the system does not automatically obtain a subnet mask, enter one here.</p> <p>Changing this setting causes the system to restart.</p>
Default Gateway (IPv4)	<p>Displays the gateway currently assigned to the system.</p> <p>If the system does not automatically obtain a gateway IP address, enter one here.</p> <p>Changing this setting causes the system to restart.</p>

Setting	Description
IP Address (IPv6)	<p>Specifies how the system obtains an IP address.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Obtain IP address automatically — Select if the system gets an IP address automatically. DHCP is not currently supported for IPv6. When you choose this setting, the system uses Stateless Address Autoconfiguration (SLAAC) to obtain a global address, unique local address (ULA), or site-local address using router advertisements. The network router(s) also must be configured appropriately to provide the advertisement packets. • Enter IP address manually — Select if the IP address will not be assigned automatically. <p>Changing this setting causes the system to restart.</p>
Link-Local	Displays the IPv6 address used for local communication within a subnet.
Site-Local	Displays the IPv6 address used for communication within the site or organization.
Global Address	Displays the IPv6 internet address.
Default Gateway (IPv6)	<p>Displays the gateway currently assigned to the system. If the system does not automatically obtain a gateway IP address, enter one here.</p> <p>Changing this setting causes the system to restart.</p>

3 Select  and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Host Name	Indicates the system's DNS name. Changing this setting causes the system to restart.
Domain Name	Displays the domain name currently assigned to the system. If the system does not automatically obtain a domain name, enter one here.
DNS Servers	Displays the DNS servers currently assigned to the system. If the system does not automatically obtain a DNS server address, enter up to four DNS servers here. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> IPv6: You can specify IPv6 DNS server addresses for IP addresses entered manually or obtained automatically (in the case of a system on a hybrid network that obtains IPv4 DNS server addresses via DHCPv4). IPv4: You can specify IPv4 DNS server addresses only when the IPv4 address is entered manually. When the IPv4 address is obtained automatically, the DNS Server addresses are also obtained automatically. Changing this setting causes the system to restart.
LAN Speed	Specify the LAN speed to use. Note that the speed you choose must be supported by the switch. Choose Auto to have the network switch negotiate the speed automatically. Choosing Auto automatically sets Duplex Mode to Auto . If you choose 10 Mbps , 100 Mbps , or 1000 Mbps you must set Duplex Mode to Half or Full . Note: Polycom does not support Auto for the Polycom HDX system only or the switch only; the settings for both must be the same. Changing this setting causes the system to restart.
Duplex Mode	Specify the duplex mode to use. Note that the Duplex mode you choose must be supported by the switch. Choose Auto to have the network switch negotiate the Duplex mode automatically. Choosing Auto automatically sets LAN Speed to Auto . The duplex settings for both the Polycom HDX system and the switch must be the same. Polycom recommends that you set both to Auto. IEEE802.3 also recommends that you use Autonegotiation to avoid network issues. Changing this setting causes the system to restart.

4 Select and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Enable EAP/802.1X	Specifies whether EAP/802.1X network access is enabled. Polycom HDX systems support the following authentication protocols: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • EAP-MD5 • EAP-PEAPv0 (MSCHAPv2) • EAP-TTLS
Identity	Specifies the system's identity used for 802.1X authentication. This setting is available only when EAP/802.1X is enabled.
Password	Specifies the system's password used for 802.1X authentication. This setting is available only when EAP/802.1X is enabled.
Enable 802.1p/Q	Specifies whether VLAN and link layer priorities are enabled.
VLAN ID	Specifies the identification of the Virtual LAN. This setting is available only when 802.1p/Q is enabled. The value can be any number from 1 to 4094.
Video Priority	Sets the link layer priority of video traffic on the LAN. Video traffic is any RTP traffic consisting of video data and any associated RTCP traffic. This setting is available only when 802.1p/Q is enabled. The value can be any number from 0 to 7, although 6 and 7 are not recommended.
Audio Priority	Sets the priority of audio traffic on the LAN. Audio traffic is any RTP traffic consisting of audio data and any associated RTCP traffic. This setting is available only when 802.1p/Q is enabled. The value can be any number from 0 to 7, although 6 and 7 are not recommended.
Control Priority	Sets the priority of control traffic on the LAN. Control traffic is any traffic consisting of control information associated with a call: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • H.323—H.225.0 Call Signaling, H.225.0 RAS, H.245, Far End Camera Control • SIP—SIP Signaling, Far End Camera Control, Binary Floor Control Protocol (BFCP) This setting is available only when 802.1p/Q is enabled. The value can be any number from 0 to 7, although 6 and 7 are not recommended.
Enable PC LAN Port	Specifies whether the PC LAN port is enabled on the back of a Polycom HDX 4000, Polycom HDX 7000, Polycom HDX 8000 series, or Polycom HDX 9006 system. Disable this setting for increased security.

Configuring IP Settings

Specifying H.323 Settings

If your network uses a gatekeeper, the system can automatically register its H.323 name and extension. This allows others to call the system by entering the H.323 name or extension instead of the IP address.

To specify H.323 settings:


- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > IP > H.323 Settings**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the H.323 Settings screen:

Setting	Description
Display H.323 Extension	Allows users to enter H.323 extensions separately from the gateway ID on the Place a Call screen. If your system is registered with a gatekeeper, this setting also displays your H.323 extension on the home screen. If you do not select this setting, users make gateway calls by entering the call information in this format: gateway ID + ## + extension
H.323 Name	Specifies the name that gatekeepers and gateways use to identify this system. You can make point-to-point calls using H.323 names if both systems are registered to a gatekeeper. The H.323 Name is the same as the System Name, unless you change it. Your organization's dial plan may define the names you can use.
H.323 Extension (E.164)	Lets users place point-to-point calls using the extension if both systems are registered with a gatekeeper, and specifies the extension that gatekeepers and gateways use to identify this system. Your organization's dial plan may define the extensions you can use.


Configuring the System to Use a Gatekeeper

A gatekeeper manages functions such as bandwidth control and admission control. The gatekeeper also handles address translation, which allows users to make calls using static aliases instead of IP addresses that may change each day.

To configure the system to use a gatekeeper:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > IP > H.323 Settings**.
- 2 Select  and configure these settings on the Gatekeeper screen:

Setting	Description
Use Gatekeeper	<p>Specifies whether to use a gatekeeper. Gateways and gatekeepers are required for calls between IP and ISDN.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off — Calls do not use a gatekeeper. • Auto — System attempts to automatically find an available gatekeeper. • Specify — Calls use the specified gatekeeper. • Specify with PIN — Calls use the specified E.164 address and require an Authentication PIN. This setting is available only when the Avaya® option key is installed.
H.323 Name	<p>Specifies the name that gatekeepers use to identify this system. You can make point-to-point calls using H.323 names if both systems are registered to a gatekeeper. The H.323 Name is the same as the System Name, unless you change it. Your organization's dial plan may define the names you can use.</p>
H.323 Extension (E.164)	<p>Specifies the extension that gatekeepers and gateways use to identify this system. Your organization's dial plan may define the extensions you can use.</p>
Gatekeeper IP Address	<p>If you chose to use an automatically selected gatekeeper, this area displays the gatekeeper's IP address.</p> <p>If you chose to specify a gatekeeper, enter the gatekeeper's IP address or name (for example, gatekeeper.companyname.usa.com, or 10.11.12.13).</p>
Authentication PIN	<p>Specifies the password PIN to use for authentication with the Avaya Communication Manager®. This setting is available when Use Gatekeeper is set to Specify with PIN.</p>
Use PathNavigator for Multipoint Calls	<p>Lets you specify whether multipoint calls use the system's internal multipoint capability or the Conference on Demand feature available with Polycom PathNavigator™, ReadManager SE200, or Polycom CMA system. This feature is available only if the system is registered with one of these gatekeepers.</p>

- 3 If you chose to specify a gatekeeper, select  to view **Alternate Gatekeepers** that the system can use if the primary gatekeeper is not available.



Points to note about Polycom's Conference on Demand feature:

In order to place calls using Conference on Demand, you need to:

- Register your Polycom HDX system with a Polycom gatekeeper. A Polycom MGC™ or Polycom RMX® system must be configured with the gatekeeper to provide the Conference on Demand feature.
- Enable Use PathNavigator for Multipoint Calls.
- Create a group in the directory (recommended).

When using Conference on Demand:

- Once the call begins, you cannot add another site to the call — even if the site was in the call originally.
- The Polycom MGC or RMX system must have enough ports available to complete the call.

Configuring Integration with Avaya Networks

Polycom HDX systems with an Avaya option key can use the following features on an Avaya telephony network:

- Call forwarding (all, busy, no answer)—Configured by the Avaya Communication Manager administrator and implemented by the user
- Call coverage—Configured by the Avaya Communication Manager administrator
- Transfer—Implemented via flash hook and dialing digits
- Audio conference—Implemented via flash hook and dialing digits
- Call park
- Answer back
- DTMF tones for Avaya functions

Refer to the Avaya documentation and *User's Guide for Polycom HDX Systems* for information about these features.



AES Encryption is not supported for systems registered to an Avaya H.323 gatekeeper.

To install the Avaya option key:

- 1 Obtain a license number from Avaya, then enter that number online on the Polycom web site at www.polycom.com/support/video, along with your Polycom HDX system serial number. This returns a key code for the Avaya option.
- 2 On the Polycom HDX system go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Options** and enter the key code for the Avaya option.


To configure the Polycom HDX system to use Avaya network features:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > IP > H.323 Settings > Next**.
Set **Use Gatekeeper to Specify with PIN**.
Enter the **H.323 Extension (E.164)** provided by the Avaya Communication Manager administrator.
Enter the Avaya Communication Manager IP address for **Gatekeeper IP Address**.
Enter the **Authentication PIN** provided by the Avaya Communication Manager administrator.
- 2 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > IP > Call Preference**.
Set **Enable H.239**.
- 3 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > System Settings > Call Settings**.
Set **Auto Answer Point-to-Point Video** and **Auto Answer Multipoint Video** to **No**.

Configuring the System to Use a Gateway


A gateway performs code and protocol conversion between H.323 (IP), SIP, and H.320 (ISDN), so that users on different networks can call one another. If the system is configured to use a gateway, you must also configure it to use a gatekeeper. For more information, refer to [Configuring the System to Use a Gatekeeper](#) on page 2-7.

To configure the system to use a gateway:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > IP > H.323 Settings**.
- 2 Select  two or three times and configure these settings on the Gateway screen:

Setting	Description
Country Code	Specifies the country code for the system's location.
Area Code	Specifies the area or city code for the system's location.
Number	Specifies the gateway's number.
H.323 Extension (E.164)	Specifies the extension that identifies this system for incoming gateway calls. The default H.323 Extension can be changed.

Setting	Description
Gateway Number Type	<p>Specifies the number type users enter to call this system:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Direct Inward Dial — Users enter an internal extension to call this system directly. <p>Note: If you choose this setting, you must also register the number with the gatekeeper as an E.164 alias.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Number + Extension — Users enter the gateway number and the system's extension to call this system.
Number of Digits in DID Number	<p>Specifies the number of digits in the DID number.</p> <p>The national or regional dialing plan for your location determines the standard number of digits. For instance, the US standard is 7 digits.</p>
Number of Digits in Extension	<p>Specifies the number of digits in the extension used when Direct Inward Dial is selected.</p> <p>Your organization's dial plan determines this number.</p>

- 3 Select  and enter a prefix or suffix for each bandwidth you want to allow for gateway calls.

Associating prefixes and suffixes with particular bandwidths on your gateway can optimize the use of bandwidth by your organization. Be sure the gateway is configured to use the same prefixes and suffixes you define for the system.

Specifying SIP Settings

If your network supports the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP), you can use SIP to connect IP calls. To use SIP, go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > Call Preference** and enable **SIP**.

To specify SIP Settings:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > IP > SIP Settings**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the SIP Settings screen:

Setting	Description
Transport Protocol	<p>Indicates the protocol the system uses for SIP signaling. The SIP network infrastructure in which your Polycom HDX system is operating determines which protocol is required.</p> <p>Auto enables an automatic negotiation of protocols in the following order: TLS, TCP, UDP. This is the recommended setting for most environments.</p> <p>TCP provides reliable transport via TCP for SIP signaling.</p> <p>UDP provides best-effort transport via UDP for SIP signaling.</p> <p>TLS provides secure communication of the SIP signaling. TLS is available only when the system is registered with a SIP server that supports TLS. When you choose this setting, the system ignores TCP/UDP port 5060.</p>
User Name	<p>Specifies the SIP address or SIP name of the system—for example, mary.smith@department.company.com. If you leave this field blank, the system's IP address is used for authentication.</p>
Domain User Name	<p>Specifies the name to use for authentication when registering with a SIP Registrar Server—for example, msmith@company.com. If the SIP proxy requires authentication, this field and the password cannot be blank.</p>
Password	<p>Specifies the password that authenticates the system to the Registrar Server.</p>

Setting	Description
SIP Registrar Server	<p>Specifies the DNS name or IP address of the SIP Registrar Server.</p> <p>By default, the SIP signaling is sent to port 5060 on the registrar server. To specify a different port, add it to the address as shown here: 10.11.12.13:5070</p> <p>If you leave this field blank, the Proxy Server address is used.</p>
Proxy Server	<p>Specifies the DNS name or IP address of the SIP Proxy Server. If you leave this field blank, the Registrar Server is used. If you leave both fields blank, no Proxy Server is used.</p> <p>By default, the SIP signaling is sent to port 5060 on the proxy server. To specify a different port, add it to the address as shown here: 10.11.12.13:5070</p>
Microsoft Office Communications Server	<p>Specifies whether the SIP Registrar Server is a Microsoft Office Communications Server. Enabling this setting activates integration features such as the Microsoft global directory and Office Communicator contact sharing with presence.</p>



Points to note about SIP:

The SIP protocol has been widely adapted for voice over IP communications and basic video conferencing; however, many of the advanced video conferencing capabilities are not yet standardized. Many capabilities also depend on the SIP server.

Examples of features that are not supported using SIP are:

- Cascaded multipoint is not supported in SIP calls.
- For more information about SIP compatibility issues, refer to the *Release Notes for Polycom HDX Systems*.

Configuring SIP Settings for Integration with Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007

Polycom HDX software version 2.6 has been qualified with Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007. Integration with Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007 allows Office Communicator and Polycom HDX system users to place audio and video calls to each other.



If a Polycom HDX system is running in dynamic management mode, it cannot be simultaneously registered with Office Communications Server and the presence service provided by Converged Management Service (CMA). Polycom HDX systems can obtain presence services from only one source: Office Communications Server or the presence service provided by CMA.

When integrated with Office Communications Server, a Polycom HDX system can search the Directory for other Office Communications Server users who are not in the Polycom HDX system's Favorites list. This search sends queries to the corporate directory through Office Communications Server.

For more information about searching the Office Communications Server 2007 directory and calling Office Communicator users, refer to the *User's Guide for Polycom HDX Systems*.

If your organization deploys multiple Office Communications Server pools, a Polycom HDX system must be registered to the same pool to which the system's user account is assigned.

To register with an Office Communications Server pool:

Go to **Admin Settings > Network > IP > SIP Settings** and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Transport Protocol	Set this to Auto or to the specific protocol (TLS or TCP) enabled on the Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007. Polycom HDX systems must be connected to Microsoft Office Communications Server using TLS in order to support AES encryption in calls. For more information about encryption settings in a Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007 environment, refer to Configuring Encryption Settings for Integration with Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007 on page 8-8.
User Name	Enter the information from the Active Directory attribute msRTCSIP-PrimaryUserAddress for this system. This information is also available under Sign-in name if you run the Active Directory Users and Groups tool, right-click the Polycom HDX system account, and select Properties > Communications .
Domain User Name	Enter the Microsoft Windows domain user name. This is also the information from the Active Directory attribute userPrincipalName for this system. This information is also available under User logon name if you run the Active Directory Users and Groups tool, right-click the Polycom HDX system account, and select Properties > Account .
Password	Enter the password for the user or conference room account.

Setting	Description
SIP Registrar Server	Enter the DNS name or IP address of the Office Communications Server pool to which the user or conference room account is assigned.
Proxy Server	Enter the DNS name or IP address of the Office Communications Server pool to which the user or conference room account is assigned.
Microsoft Office Communications Server	Enable this setting to activate integration features such as the Microsoft global directory and Office Communicator contact sharing with presence.

Specifying Quality of Service

Set the Quality of Service options for the way your network handles IP packets during video calls.

Polycom Video Error Concealment and Dynamic Bandwidth

You can handle video quality issues by enabling the PVEC (Polycom Video Error Concealment) setting, the Dynamic Bandwidth setting, or both settings.

If both settings are enabled, Dynamic Bandwidth adjusts the Video Rate in order to reduce packet loss to 3% or less. When the Packet Loss drops to 3% or less, PVEC cleans up the video image on your monitor. The overhead required for PVEC might cause the Video Rate Used to drop below the Video Rate. If Packet Loss is 0 for at least 10 minutes, PVEC stops operating and the Video Rate Used increases to match the Video Rate.

If only PVEC is enabled and the system detects Packet Loss, PVEC attempts to clean the image but the Video Rate is not adjusted. If only Dynamic Bandwidth is enabled and the system detects Packet Loss of 3% or more, the Video Rate is adjusted but PVEC does not clean the image.


You can view % Packet Loss, Video Rate, and Video Rate Used on the Call Statistics screen. Press Info on the remote control during a call to get to the Call Statistics screen.

Quality of Service Settings

To specify Quality of Service:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > IP > Quality of Service**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the Quality of Service screen:

Setting	Description
Type of Service	<p>Specifies your service type and lets you choose how to set the priority of IP packets sent to the system for video, audio, and far-end camera control:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IP Precedence — Represents the priority of IP packets sent to the system. The value can be between 0 and 5. If this setting is selected, enter the value in the Type of Service Value field. • DiffServ — Represents a priority level between 0 and 63. If this setting is selected, enter the value in the Type of Service Value field.
Type of Service Value	<p>Specifies the IP Precedence or Diffserv value for Video, Audio, and Control.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Audio—audio RTP traffic and associated RTCP traffic • Video—video RTP traffic and associated RTCP traffic • Control—traffic on any of the following channels: H.323—H.225.0 Call Signaling, H.225.0 RAS, H.245, Far End Camera Control SIP—SIP Signaling, Far End Camera Control, Binary Floor Control Protocol (BFCP)
Maximum Transmission Unit Size	<p>Specifies the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) size used in IP calls. If the video becomes blocky or network errors occur, packets may be too large; decrease the MTU. If the network is burdened with unnecessary overhead, packets may be too small; increase the MTU.</p>
Enable PVEC	<p>Allows the system to use PVEC (Polycom Video Error Concealment) if packet loss occurs.</p>
Enable RSVP	<p>Allows the system to use Resource Reservation Setup Protocol (RSVP) to request that routers reserve bandwidth along an IP connection path. Both the near site and far site must support RSVP in order for reservation requests to be made to routers on the connection path.</p>

- 3 Select  and configure these settings on the Bandwidth screen:

Setting	Description
Dynamic Bandwidth	Specifies whether to let the system automatically find the optimum line speed for a call.
Maximum Transmit Bandwidth	Specifies the maximum transmit line speed between 64 kbps and the system's maximum line rate.
Maximum Receive Bandwidth	Specifies the maximum receive line speed between 64 kbps and the system's maximum line rate. Note: The 8 Mbps Line Rate feature is only for multipoint calls. It is not available as a maximum bandwidth.

Configuring the System for Use with a Firewall or NAT

A firewall protects an organization's IP network by controlling data traffic from outside the network. Unless the firewall is designed to work with H.323 video conferencing equipment, you must configure the system and the firewall to allow video conferencing traffic to pass in and out of the network.

Firewall Settings

Network Address Translation (NAT) network environments use private internal IP addresses for devices within the network, while using one external IP address to allow devices on the LAN to communicate with other devices outside the LAN. If your system is connected to a LAN that uses a NAT, you will need to enter the **NAT Public (WAN) Address** so that your system can communicate outside the LAN.

To set up the system to work with a firewall or NAT:

- 1** Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > IP > Firewall.**
- 2** Configure these settings on the Firewall screen:

Setting	Description
Fixed Ports	<p>Lets you specify whether to define the TCP and UDP ports.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the firewall is not H.323 compatible, enable this setting. The Polycom HDX system assigns a range of ports starting with the TCP and UDP ports you specify. The system defaults to a range beginning with port 3230 for both TCP and UDP. <p>Note: You must open the corresponding ports in the firewall. You must also open the firewall's TCP port 1720 to allow H.323 traffic.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the firewall is H.323 compatible or the system is not behind a firewall, disable this setting. <p>For IP you need 2 TCP ports per connection, 8 UDP ports per connection. For SIP you need TCP port 5060, 8 UDP ports per connection.</p>
TCP Ports UDP Ports	<p>Lets you specify the beginning value for the range of TCP and UDP ports used by the system. The system automatically sets the range of ports based on the beginning value you set.</p> <p>Note: You must also open the firewall's TCP port 1720 to allow H.323 traffic.</p>
Enable H.460 Firewall Traversal	<p>Allows the system to use H.460-based firewall traversal for IP calls. For more information, refer to H.460 NAT Firewall Traversal on page 2-19.</p>
NAT Configuration	<p>Lets you specify whether the system should determine the NAT Public WAN Address automatically.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the system is not behind a NAT or is connected to the IP network through a Virtual Private Network (VPN), select Off. • If the system is behind a NAT that allows HTTP traffic, select Auto. • If the system is behind a NAT that does not allow HTTP traffic, select Manual.
NAT Public (WAN) Address	<p>Displays the address that callers from outside the LAN use to call your system. If you chose to configure the NAT manually, enter the NAT Public Address here.</p>
NAT is H.323 Compatible	<p>Specifies that the system is behind a NAT that is capable of translating H.323 traffic.</p>
Address Displayed in Global Directory	<p>Lets you choose whether to display this system's public or private address in the global directory.</p>

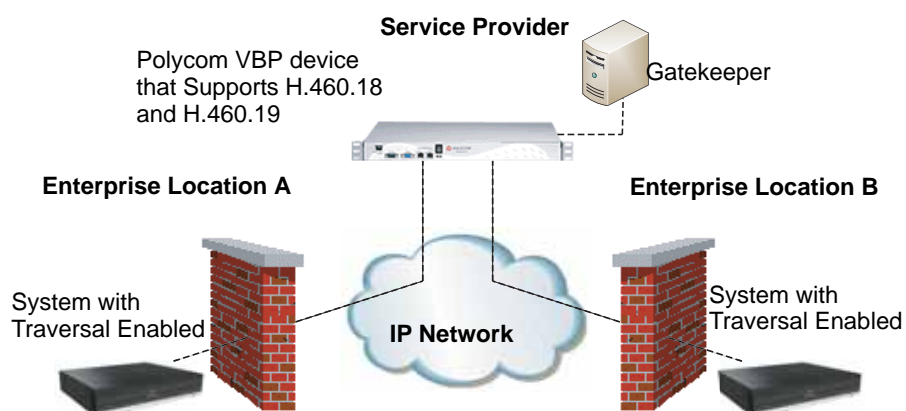


Visit the Polycom Security section of the Knowledge Base at www.polycom.com for timely security information. Systems deployed outside a firewall are potentially vulnerable to unauthorized access. You can also register to receive periodic email updates and advisories.

H.460 NAT Firewall Traversal

You can configure Polycom HDX systems to use standards-based H.460.18 and H.460.19 firewall traversal, which allows video systems to more easily establish IP connections across firewalls.

The following illustration shows how a service provider might provide H.460 firewall traversal between two enterprise locations. In this example the Polycom Video Border Proxy™ (VBP™) firewall traversal device is on the edge of the service provider network and facilitates IP calls between Polycom HDX systems behind different firewalls.



To use this traversal, Polycom HDX systems and firewalls must be configured as follows:

- Enable firewall traversal on the Polycom HDX system.
 - 1** Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > IP > Firewall**.
 - 2** Select **Enable H.460 Firewall Traversal**.
- Register the Polycom HDX system to an external Polycom VBP device that supports the H.460.18 and H.460.19 standards.
- Make sure that firewalls being traversed allow Polycom HDX systems behind them to open outbound TCP and UDP connections.
 - Firewalls with a stricter rule set should allow Polycom HDX systems to open at least the following outbound TCP and UDP ports: 1720 (TCP), 14085-15084 (TCP) and 1719(UDP), 16386-25386 (UDP).
 - Firewalls should permit inbound traffic to TCP and UDP ports that have been opened earlier in the outbound direction.

Connecting Polycom HDX Systems to ISDN or Other Networks

The following network interface modules are available for some Polycom HDX systems:

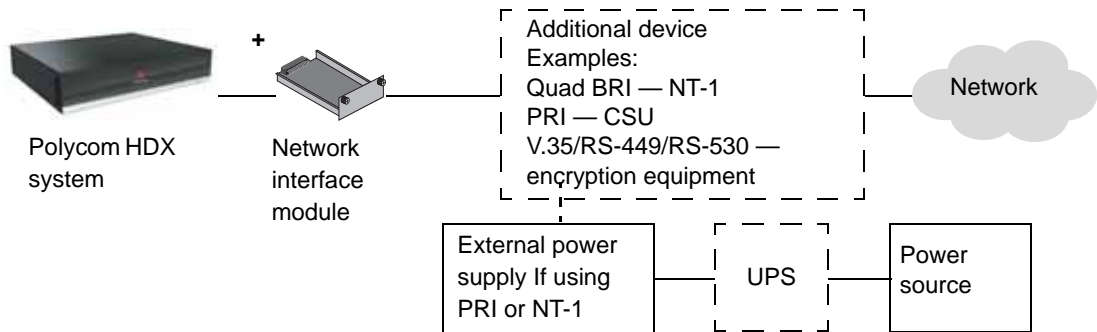
- **BRI** — Allows you to connect to an ISDN network using up to four BRI lines.
- **PRI** — Allows you to connect to an ISDN T1 or E1 network using a PRI line.
- **V.35/RS-449/RS-530** — Allows you to connect to third-party network equipment, including encryption equipment and RS-366 dialers.

If you received a network interface module with your system, you may find it convenient to install it before positioning the system. Refer to the setup sheet that you received with the network interface module. Make sure that the system is powered off before you connect devices to it.

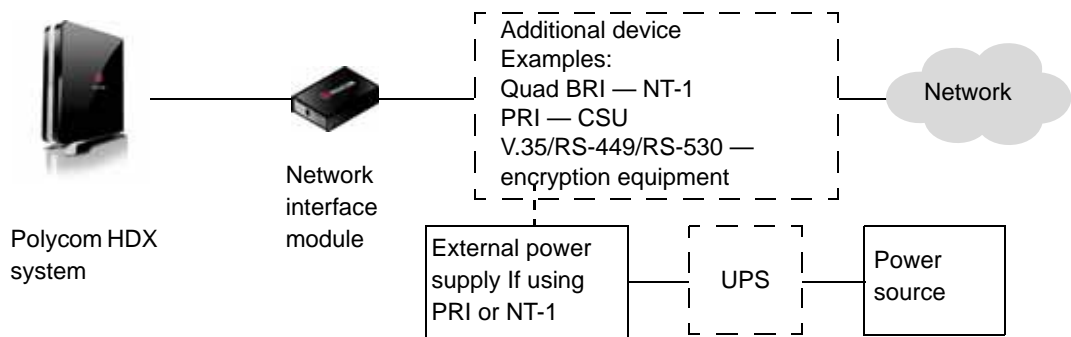
You will need the following network hardware.

If your network interface module is...	You will need
BRI	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • NT-1 device, if the system will be connected to a network that provides a U interface. Do not use an NT-1 device if your PBX network provides an S/T interface. • Up to 4 BRI lines that will not be shared with other equipment. <p>If you connect fewer than four BRI ports on the system's network interface module, connect them in ascending order, starting with port 1.</p>
PRI (North America and Japan)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PBX crossover cable, if required for your PBX. • Channel Service Unit (CSU) — not required if you connect the system to a PBX network. • PRI line.
PRI (outside North America and Japan)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 75 W coaxial adapter, if the network connection is via a 75 W coaxial cable. • PBX crossover cable, if required for your PBX. • PRI line.
Serial V.35/RS-449/ RS-530 (with RS-366 dialing)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Third-party network equipment and cables. <p>Contact your network equipment vendor to obtain the appropriate cables for the equipment you connect to this interface. If you use only one cable, connect it to port 1 of the network interface module and to the lowest-numbered port of the data communications equipment.</p>

The diagram below shows a general view of how network interface modules are connected in Polycom HDX 9000 series systems.



The diagram below shows a general view of how network interface modules are connected with Polycom HDX 4000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, and Polycom HDX 8000 series systems.



Quad BRI Network Interface Status Lights

The network interface lights are located on the network interface module.

When the BRI network interface...	It means...
Indicators are off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No power to the system, or The system is not connected to the network, or The system is not receiving a clock signal from the network, or The system is restarting.

When the BRI network interface...	It means...
Green indicator is on	The system is receiving a clock signal from the network.
Yellow indicator is on	The system is able to make a call.
Green and yellow indicators are on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The system is receiving a software update, or The system is operating normally.

PRI Network Interface Status Lights

The network interface lights are located on the network interface module.

When the PRI network interface...	It means...
Indicators are off	No power to the system.
Red indicator is on or blinking	The system is not connected to the ISDN network, or there is a problem with the ISDN line.
Yellow indicator is on or blinking	There is a problem with the ISDN line.
Green indicator is on	The system is able to make and receive calls.

Serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530 Network Interface Status Lights

The network interface lights are located on the network interface module.

When the serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530 network interface...	It means...
Indicators are off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No power to the system, or The system is not communicating with the network, or The system is restarting.
Yellow indicator is on	The system is receiving a clock signal from the network (able to make a call).
Yellow and green indicators are on	The system is in a call.

Configuring ISDN and Other Network Interface Settings

You can configure a network interface option if the corresponding network interface module is installed. The system automatically detects the type of interface installed and displays only the required configuration screens.

Configuring the BRI Network Interface

To configure the ISDN network interface settings:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > ISDN**.
- 2 Configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Enable ISDN H.320	Allows this system to make H.320 (ISDN) calls.
Number of ISDN Channels to Dial in Parallel	Specifies how many channels to dial at one time. You can specify up to eight channels. If you experience network problems, decrease the number.
Outside Line Dialing Prefix	Specifies the ISDN dialing prefix used to call outside the network.

- 3 Select  and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Numbering Plan	Select the appropriate numbering plan for your location, if it differs from the default.
ISDN Voice Algorithm	Specifies which voice algorithm (aLaw or uLaw) is used for ISDN voice calls. Do not change this setting unless you experience audio issues in all ISDN voice calls.
ISDN Switch Protocols	Specifies the protocol used by your network's switch.
Auto BRI Configuration	Allows the NI-1 or NI-2 switch to automatically configure the directory numbers and SPIDs. This setting is only available if you have selected the NI-1 or NI-2 switch protocol.

4 Select  and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Country, Country Code	Displays the country selected as the system's location and the country code used for international calls to the system. To specify the system's location, go to System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Location . The system automatically supplies the country code when you specify the country.
Area Code	Specifies the area code for this system's location.
Directory Numbers	Specifies the numbers assigned to the B1 and B2 channels for each BRI line. The two numbers for a line may be the same or different, depending on the switch protocol in use.
Enable	Specifies whether to enable the associated ISDN line. If you selected Standard ETSI Euro-ISDN protocol, you must enable all BRI lines that you expect to be active, and you must not enable lines that will not be connected. You may want to disable a particular line if there are problems with the line that generate continuing error messages.

- 5 If you have configured the ISDN switch protocol to be AT&T 5ESS Multipoint, NI-1, NI-2, or Nortel DMS-100, select  and enter the ISDN BRI SPIDs provided by your service provider.

After you enter the SPIDs, the system verifies them. If the system is unable to verify the SPIDs, make sure the system is connected and that the ISDN numbers you entered are correct.

If you do not have the SPIDs from your service provider, you can click **Start** to Auto Detect SPIDs.

Configuring the PRI Network Interface



Points to note about fractional PRI:

- Assigned channels must begin with channel 1, and the channel numbers must be consecutive.
- A D channel must be provided.
- Outbound call bandwidth must not exceed the available bandwidth.


To configure the ISDN network interface settings:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > ISDN**.
- 2 Configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Enable ISDN H.320	Allows this system to make H.320 (ISDN) calls.
Area Code	Specifies the area code for this system's location.
PRI Video Number	Specifies the ISDN number assigned to this system.
Outside Line Dialing Prefix	Specifies the ISDN dialing prefix used to call outside the network.
BONDING: Calling Endpoint Uses the Original ISDN Number	Specifies the use of a bonding standard. Incoming bonded calls will use the original number received to connect all remaining lines required for the call.

- 3 Select  and configure these settings:


Setting	Description
Line Signaling	Specifies the framing format in use. This setting is configurable for PRI E1, read-only for PRI T1.
External CSU North America only	Specifies whether this system uses an external or internal Channel Service Unit (CSU).
Line Build Out PRI T1 only	For systems using an internal CSU, indicates the output attenuation in dB. Your service provider can provide you with these values. For systems using an external CSU, indicates the length (in feet) of the RJ-45 cable that connects the PRI network interface module to the CSU.
Switch Protocol	Specifies the Network switch protocol. The available choices are determined by the system's country settings. This setting is read-only for PRI E1, configurable for PRI T1. Your ISDN service provider can tell you which protocol your network uses. If you later change the Country setting, the PRI switch protocols available may also change, and you may be prompted to configure a different PRI switch protocol.
ISDN Voice Algorithm	Specifies which voice algorithm (aLaw or uLaw) is used for ISDN voice calls. Do not change this setting unless you experience audio issues in all ISDN voice calls.

4 Select  and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Numbering Plan	Select the appropriate numbering plan for your location, if it differs from the default.
International Dialing Prefix	Specify the dialing prefix needed for international calls.
Call-by-Call	Specifies a code that the system sends to the telephone company switch to request a special service, if such a code is required. Consult your telephone service provider to determine the proper call-by-call value.
Number of ISDN Channels to Dial in Parallel	Specifies how many channels to dial at one time. You can specify up to eight channels. If you experience network problems, decrease the number. Set this value to 1 for serial dialing. Serial dialing is not recommended unless you have trouble connecting calls using parallel dialing.
Restore Defaults	Resets all values on this screen. This does not affect other PRI settings.

5 Select  and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
PRI Line Type	Displays read-only information about the system and its configuration.
Number of Active Channels	
D Channel Location	
Network Mode	
Clock Source	
Terminal Endpoint ID TEI	
Line Termination PRI E1 only	

6 Select  and select a channel to activate or deactivate it. Active channels are represented by a green icon, and inactive channels are represented by a gray icon.



Make sure that channels are activated and deactivated only by a knowledgeable network professional so that the system operates properly and can dial at the desired rates.

Configuring the Serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530 Network Interface

To configure the V.35/RS-449/RS-530 network interface settings:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > V.35/RS-449/RS-530**.
- 2 Configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Enable V.35/RS-449/RS-530	Allows the system to connect to a terminal adapter using a V.35, RS-449, or RS-530 connection.
V.35 Ports Used	Specifies whether one or two lines are connected.
RS-366 Dialing	Allows users to dial calls from this system. Clear this setting if this is a dedicated connection or if another device is used for dialing calls.
Area Code Port 1 Port 2	Specifies the area code and number(s) that other sites dial to reach this system. If this is a dedicated connection, leave these fields blank.

- 3 Select  and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Prefix	Lets you specify the dialing prefix required to reach an outside line.
Calling Profile	Lets you specify what data communications equipment is connected to the network interface. The system automatically displays the default prefixes, suffixes, and calling speeds required by that device. If your device is not listed, select Custom .
Speed	Lets you define the prefixes or suffixes to use for each speed used in a Custom Calling Profile. For information about required prefixes and suffixes, see the documentation that came with the device. If you choose a predefined Calling Profile, this information is supplied for you.


4 Select  and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
ST	Lets you specify the signaling required by the external device connected to the system. Specify normal or inverted, as appropriate. In most cases, normal signaling is appropriate. If your system is connected to Ascend equipment, you may need to set CTS to Ignore .
RT	
RTS	
CTS	
DSR	
DCD	
DTR	
Answer on DSR	Specifies that the system should begin the call when it detects a DSR signal.
Delayed DCD Hangup	Specifies how long the system waits to end the call after a DCD signal is lost (for example, during a call via satellite).
DTR Pulse Duration (secs)	Specifies how long the DTR signal goes low after the far site hangs up. When the pulse is too short, the call may not clear. If your system is connected to ADTRAN equipment, you may need to adjust DTR pulse duration.
Trigger Call on H.320 Data	Specifies whether the call starts when H.320 data is detected at the V.35 interface while set for direct connect.

5 Select  and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Crypto Resync	Allows a Polycom HDX system connected to cryptographic equipment to signal when it loses video synchronization during a call. The cryptographic equipment can then resynchronize with the far site.

Setting	Description
Use RTS Signal for Resync Pulse	Allows the system to send the resynchronization pulse on the RTS signal. Select this setting if your data communications equipment uses the V.35 or RS-449 capability of the serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530 network interface. Note: When you select this setting, the RTS no longer functions as the Request To Send signal.
Time Between Pulses (sec)	Specifies whether the system should set the time between resync pulses automatically or use the number of seconds you enter.
Pulse Width (millisec)	Specifies whether the system should set the pulse duration automatically or use the number of milliseconds you enter.

6 Select  and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Enable Broadcast Mode	Enables support for H.331 broadcast transmissions from the Polycom HDX system. Broadcast mode enables the system to send video and audio to many other systems, such as large satellite networks.
Enable People+Content	Enables People+Content for broadcast mode.
Video Format	Specifies the resolution at which video is transmitted.
Video Protocol	Specifies the protocol used to transmit video. Choose the lowest protocol supported by all systems in the conference.
Audio Protocol	Specifies the protocol used to transmit audio.
Frame Rate	Specifies the frame rate to use.

Connecting to an Analog Phone Line

You can connect an analog phone line to a Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, or Polycom HDX 4000 series system to make regular telephone calls with the system or to add audio-only participants to video calls. The first analog phone or Voice Over ISDN connection does not count toward the number of sites in a call. Additional analog phone or Voice Over ISDN connections, as well as all H.323 audio-only and SIP audio-only connections, do count toward the number of sites in a call.

A connected SoundStation® IP 7000 conference phone can use this analog phone line to make regular telephone calls when the Polycom HDX system is configured as described in [Configuring Telephony](#) on page 2-30.



The country setting must be configured correctly on the Polycom HDX system to ensure proper operation of the phone line and to comply with local telephony regulations.


Configuring Telephony

To configure telephony options:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > Telephony**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the Telephony screen:

Setting	Description
Room Telephone Number	Enter the telephone number of the room where the system is located.
System Telephone Number Polycom HDX 9000 series Polycom HDX 8000 series Polycom HDX 4000 series	Specifies the analog phone number of the system, including country and area codes for the system's location.
Outside Line Dialing Prefix Polycom HDX 9000 series Polycom HDX 8000 series Polycom HDX 4000 series	Specifies the dialing prefix used to call outside the network.

To configure the analog phone line (POTS line):

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > Telephony**.
Enter the **System Telephone Number** for the analog phone line.
- 2 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > Call Preference**.
Enable Analog Phone.
- 3 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > Call Preference > **.
Add **Analog Phone** to the Phone Dialing Order on the Network Dialing screen.

Configuring Call Preferences

Call preferences help you manage the network bandwidth used for calls. You can specify the default and optional call settings for outgoing calls. You can also limit the call speeds of incoming calls.

To choose call preferences:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > Call Preference**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the Call Preference screen:

Setting	Description
Basic Mode	Enables a limited operating mode that uses H.261 for video and G.711 for audio. This mode provides administrators with a workaround for interoperability issues that cannot be solved using other methods. The Basic Mode setting stays in effect until you change it. Basic Mode disables many system features such as content sharing, far end camera control, and advanced audio and video algorithms. Use Basic Mode only when calling systems that fail to operate properly with these advanced features.
H.239	Specifies standards-based People+Content data collaboration. Enable this option if you know that H.239 is supported by the far sites you will call. If callers experience issues when sharing content with other Polycom systems, disable this setting.
IP H.323	Allows the system to make IP calls.
SIP	Allows the system to use SIP when connecting IP calls.
Analog Phone Polycom HDX 9000 series Polycom HDX 8000 series Polycom HDX 4000 series	Allows the system to make voice-only calls to any phone using an analog phone line.

Setting	Description
<p>Transcoding Polycom HDX 9006 Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 8000 series Polycom HDX 4000 HD</p>	<p>Specifies whether the system allows each far-site system to connect at the best possible call rate and audio/video algorithm. If transcoding is disabled, the Polycom HDX system down-speeds all connections to the same call rate.</p> <p>Polycom HDX 4000 HD, Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 9002, Polycom HDX 9004, and Polycom HDX 9006 systems support transcoding for audio and video algorithms, video resolution, and call rate. Polycom HDX 7000 HD systems support transcoding for audio algorithms and use speed matching for the call rate.</p>
<p>ISDN Gateway</p>	<p>Allows users to place IP-to-ISDN calls through a gateway.</p>
<p>IP Gateway</p>	<p>Allows users to place ISDN-to-IP or IP-to-IP calls through a gateway.</p>
<p>Maximum Resolution Polycom HDX 6000 series Polycom HDX 7000</p>	<p>Polycom HDX 7000 series: Allows you to send and receive 720p people video. When this setting is enabled, the system displays only two windows when using Dual Monitor Emulation.</p> <p>Polycom HDX 6000 series: Allows you to send and receive 1080p people video. When this setting is enabled, Camera 2 is automatically set to People. You can use People+Content IP to send content, but sending content will result in reduced People video quality.</p> <p>For more information about maximum resolution and call speeds, refer to Appendix C, Call Speeds and Resolutions.</p>
<p>V.35/RS-449/ RS-530</p>	<p>Allows the system to make calls through your third-party network equipment.</p> <p>This selection is only available when the system has a V.35/RS-449/RS-530 network module installed.</p>
<p>ISDN H.320</p>	<p>Allows the system to make ISDN calls.</p> <p>This selection is only available when the system has ISDN networking capability.</p>
<p>Voice Over ISDN</p>	<p>Allows the system to make voice-only calls to phones connected to an ISDN network, such as an organization's PBX. The ISDN BRI must be provisioned to support voice calls.</p> <p>This selection is only available when the system has ISDN networking capability.</p>




To make the enabled call types available on the Place a Call screen, you must enable the **Call Quality** setting described on page 7-5.

3 Select  and configure these settings on the Network Dialing screen:


Setting	Description
Preferred Dialing Method	<p>Specifies the preferred method for dialing various call types. If set to Auto, calls use the configured Dialing Order. If set to Manual, the system prompts the user to select the call type from a list when placing a call.</p> <p>Note: Call rollover does not occur for contacts called as part of a group. If preferred dialing is set to Auto, each contact in a group is called using the first available call type it has that matches the Dialing Order set on the system. If preferred dialing is set to Manual, each contact is called using the first available call type in this order: H.323, SIP, ISDN/V.35, gateway H.320, gateway H.323, Voice Over ISDN, then analog phone.</p>
Call Preference Polycom HDX 9000 series Polycom HDX 8000 series Polycom HDX 7000 series Polycom HDX 4000 series	<p>Specifies whether the Polycom HDX system uses the Video Dialing Order or the Phone Dialing Order first when placing calls. This setting is available only when both video and phone call types are available.</p>
Video Dialing Order	<p>Specifies how the system places video calls to directory entries that have more than one type of number. It also specifies how the system places video calls from the Place a Call screen when the call type selection is either unavailable or set to Auto or Video. If a call attempt does not connect, the system tries to place the call using the next call type in the list.</p> <p>This setting is available only when Preferred Dialing Method is set to Auto.</p> <p>For more information, refer to Configuring Dialing Order Settings on page 2-35.</p>
Phone Dialing Order Polycom HDX 9000 series Polycom HDX 8000 series Polycom HDX 7000 series Polycom HDX 4000 series	<p>Specifies how the system places audio calls to directory entries that have more than one type of number. It also specifies how the system places audio calls from the Place a Call screen when the call type selection is either unavailable or set to Auto or Phone. If a call attempt does not connect, the system tries to place the call using the next call type in the list.</p> <p>This setting is available only when Preferred Dialing Method is set to Auto.</p> <p>For more information, refer to Configuring Dialing Order Settings on page 2-35.</p>

- 4 Select  to go to the Preferred Speeds screens and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Preferred Speed for Placing Calls	<p>Determines the speeds that will be used for calls from this system when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Call Quality selection is either unavailable or set to Auto on the Place a Call screen The call is placed from the directory <p>If the far-site system does not support the selected speed, the system automatically negotiates a lower speed.</p>
Maximum Speed for Receiving Calls	<p>Allows you to restrict the bandwidth used when receiving calls.</p> <p>If the far site attempts to call the system at a higher speed than selected here, the call is re-negotiated at the speed specified in this field.</p>

- 5 Select  and configure these settings when the system has ISDN networking capability:

Setting	Description
ISDN Video Calls (H.320)	<p>Determines the speeds that will be used for ISDN video calls from this system when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Call Quality selection is either unavailable or set to Auto on the Place a Call screen The call is placed from the directory <p>If the far-site system does not support the selected speed, the system automatically negotiates a lower speed.</p>
International ISDN Calls	<p>Determines the speeds that will be used for International ISDN video calls from this system when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Call Quality selection is either unavailable or set to Auto on the Place a Call screen The call is placed from the directory <p>If the far-site system does not support the selected speed, the system automatically negotiates a lower speed.</p>

- 6 Select  to go to the Call Speeds screen and specify the call speeds to make available to users, if you are allowing them to choose speeds on a call-by-call basis.

Configuring Dialing Order Settings

If the call type on the home screen is set to a specific call type, the system does not attempt to place the call using a different call type, even if other types are listed in Video Dialing Order or Phone Dialing Order.

You can configure the Polycom HDX system so that users can choose to place IP-to-ISDN or ISDN-to-IP calls through a gateway.

To allow users to place an IP-to-ISDN call through a gateway:

- 1 Make sure the system is registered with a gatekeeper.
- 2 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > Call Preference** and enable **ISDN Gateway**.
- 3 If you want to allow users to place IP-to-ISDN calls through a gateway when calling from the directory, do one of the following:
 - On the Network Dialing screen, set **Preferred Dialing Method** to **Auto** and select **ISDN Gateway** as the first choice under **Video Dialing Order**. With this configuration, IP-to-ISDN calls placed from the directory will be placed through a gateway if an ISDN number exists. If the system is not registered with PathNavigator, the gateway suffix/prefix must be configured for the corresponding speed on the Gateway Setup screen at **System > Admin Settings > Network > IP > H.323 Settings**. If the system is registered with PathNavigator, the necessary suffix is added automatically when a call is placed.
 - On the Network Dialing screen, set **Preferred Dialing Method** to **Manual**. With this configuration, users can select **ISDN Gateway** from the list of call types that appears when placing a call from the directory.

To allow users to place an ISDN-to-IP call through a gateway:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > Call Preference** and enable **IP Gateway**.
- 2 If you want to allow users to place ISDN-to-IP or IP-to-IP calls through a gateway when calling from the directory, do one of the following:
 - On the Network Dialing screen, set **Preferred Dialing Method** to **Auto** and select **IP Gateway** as the first choice under **Video Dialing Order**. With this configuration, ISDN-to-IP calls placed from the directory will be placed through a gateway if an ISDN number and IP extension exist. IP-to-IP calls placed from the directory will be placed through a gateway if an IP address and IP extension exist.
 - On the Network Dialing screen, set **Preferred Dialing Method** to **Manual**. With this configuration, users can select **IP Gateway** from the list of call types that appears when placing a call from the directory.

Monitors and Cameras

Connecting Monitors

Make sure that the system is powered off before you connect devices.

Connecting Monitors to Polycom HDX 9000 Series Systems

The following table shows how you can connect monitors to a Polycom HDX 9000 series system.

Video Output Number	Connector	Output Formats
1	Two BNC (not available on Polycom HDX 9006)	S-Video, Composite
	DVI-I	VGA, DVI*, Component
2	Two BNC (not available on Polycom HDX 9006)	S-Video, Composite
	DVI-I	VGA, DVI*, Component
3 (VCR/DVD Player)	BNC (two)	S-Video, Composite
4 (Content), Polycom HDX 9004	DVI-I	VGA, DVI*, Component
* Select DVI if the monitor is connected using HDMI.		

For Monitor 1 and Monitor 2, the system may provide both dual BNC connectors and a DVI-I connector. Only one at a time is active, based on the output format configured for that monitor.

The Polycom HDX system user interface is displayed on Monitor 1. If you cannot see the user interface on the system's monitor, refer to [Changing the Video Format](#) on page 12-5.

Connecting Monitors to Polycom HDX 8000 Series or Polycom HDX 7000 Series Systems

The following table shows how you can connect monitors to a Polycom HDX 8000 series or Polycom HDX 7000 series system.

Video Output Number	Connector	Output Formats
1	DVI-I	VGA, DVI*, Component
2	DVI-I	VGA, DVI*, Component
3 (VCR/DVD Player)	S-Video	S-Video, Composite
* Select DVI if the monitor is connected using HDMI.		

The Polycom HDX system user interface is displayed on Monitor 1. If you cannot see the user interface on the system's monitor, refer to [Changing the Video Format](#) on page 12-5.

Connecting a Monitor to Polycom HDX 6000 Series Systems

The following table shows how you can connect a monitor to a Polycom HDX 6000 series system.

Video Output	Connector	Output Formats
Monitor	HDMI	HDMI, DVI

When the video output format is set to HDMI, you can get audio output from the HDMI or RCA connectors. When the video output format is set to DVI, you can get audio output from the RCA connectors only.

If you cannot see the user interface on the system's monitor, refer to [Changing the Video Format](#) on page 12-5.

Using a Polycom HDX 4000 Series Monitor with a Computer

You can use the Polycom HDX 4000 series monitor as a high-resolution display for your computer, as shown on the quick start guide.

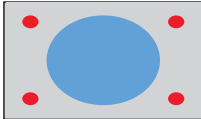

To use the Polycom HDX 4000 series monitor as the monitor for a computer:



- 1 Connect a cable from the DVI connector on the back of the Polycom HDX 4000 series system to the DVI or VGA connector on your computer.
- 2 To use the system's built-in speakers for your computer's audio, connect the 3.5mm audio cable from your computer to the audio input connector on the Polycom HDX 4000 series system.


Configuring Monitor Settings

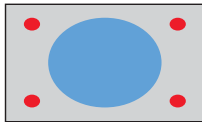

To configure monitors:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Monitors > Monitors**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the Monitors screen:

Setting	Description
Monitor 1	Specifies the monitor's aspect ratio: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4:3 — Specifies a regular TV monitor. • 16:9 — Specifies a wide-screen monitor.
Video Format	Specifies the monitor's format. For a list of available formats, refer to the information for your system in Connecting Monitors on page 3-1. Note: If you select 16:9 , you will also need to set up the monitor for full-screen display. In the monitor's setup menu, choose the setting that stretches the picture uniformly without clipping the edges, which is usually called Full, Wide screen, or 16x9. Use this setting:  Not this setting: 
Resolution	Specifies the resolution for the monitor.

Setting	Description
<p>Output Upon Screen Saver Activation</p>	<p>Specifies the screen saver output for Monitor 1:</p> <p>Specifies whether black video or no signal is sent to the monitor when the system goes to sleep and the screen saver activates.</p> <p>Select Black if you want to display screen saver text. This is the recommended setting to prevent burn-in for TV monitors.</p> <p>Select No Signal if you want the display to react as if it is not connected when the system goes to sleep. This is the recommended setting for VGA monitors and projectors, as well as Polycom HDX media carts with 1080 displays.</p>
<p>PIP</p> <p>Polycom HDX 9006 Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 9001 Polycom HDX 8000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 Polycom HDX 6000 HD</p>	<p>Specifies PIP (Picture-in-Picture) behavior:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On — The PIP window stays on for the duration of the call. • Camera — The PIP window is displayed when the call is first connected and when a user moves the camera, uses presets, or switches to a different camera source. • Off — The PIP window is not displayed during the call. <p>Note: PIP settings are also available in the User Settings screen.</p> <p>Users can turn the PIP on or off and change its location on the screen using  Display on the remote control.</p>
<p>Display Near Video Display Far Video Display Content</p> <p>Polycom HDX 9006 Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 9001 Polycom HDX 8000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 Polycom HDX 4000 HD Polycom HDX 4000</p>	<p>Specifies whether to display near video, far video, and content on this monitor.</p>
<p>Dual Monitor Emulation</p> <p>Polycom HDX 9006 Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 9001 Polycom HDX 8000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 Polycom HDX 6000 HD</p>	<p>Specifies whether the system can show multiple views on a single display. If content is being viewed, different views can be displayed by pressing  Display on the remote control.</p> <p>For more information, refer to Using Dual Monitor Emulation on page 3-9.</p>


- 3 Select  and configure these settings for a Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, or Polycom HDX 7000 series system:

Setting	Description
Monitor 2	<p>Specifies the second monitor's aspect ratio:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off — Select if you do not have a second monitor. • 4:3 — Select if you are using a regular TV monitor as the second monitor. • 16:9—Select if you are using a wide-screen monitor as the second monitor. On the monitor, select the display mode that uniformly stretches the video from side to side, which is usually called Full, Wide screen, or 16x9.
Video Format	<p>Specifies the monitor's format. For a list of available formats, refer to the information for your system in the previous section of this chapter, Connecting Monitors on page 3-1.</p> <p>Note: If you select 16:9, you will also need to set up the monitor for full-screen display. In the monitor's setup menu, choose the setting that stretches the picture uniformly without clipping the edges, which is usually called Full, Wide screen, or 16x9.</p> <p>Use this setting:  Not this setting: </p>
Resolution	Specifies the resolution for the monitor.
Output Upon Screen Saver Activation	<p>Specifies the screen saver output for Monitor 2.</p> <p>Specifies whether black video or no signal is sent to the monitor when the system goes to sleep and the screen saver activates.</p> <p>Select Black if you want to display black video. This is the recommended setting to prevent burn-in for TV monitors.</p> <p>Select No Signal if you want the display to react as if it is not connected when the system goes to sleep. This is the recommended setting for VGA monitors and projectors, as well as Polycom HDX media carts with 1080 displays.</p>
Display Near Video Display Far Video Display Content	Specifies whether to display near video, far video, and content on this monitor.

4 Select  and configure these settings for a Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, or Polycom HDX 7000 series system:


Setting	Description
<p>Monitor 3 (VCR/DVD)</p>	<p>Specifies the aspect ratio for recording.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off — Select if you do not have a VCR or DVD player connected to record video conferences. • 4:3 — Select to record for playback on a standard monitor. • 16:9—Select to record for playback on a wide-screen monitor, if your recording device has this capability. <p>Note: (Polycom HDX 8000 series and Polycom HDX 7000 series systems) The video format and resolution of Monitor 1 and Monitor 2 affect the output sent to Monitor 3, as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When Monitor 1 and Monitor 2 are both on and are both set to VGA (1920 x 1080 or 1280 x 720), DVI (1920 x 1080 or 1280 x 720), or Component (NTSC only), you can choose either Monitor 1 Image or Monitor 2 Image as the output to Monitor 3 (VCR/DVD). • When Monitor 1 and Monitor 2 are both on but only one of them is set to VGA (1920 x 1080 or 1280 x 720), DVI (1920 x 1080 or 1280 x 720), or Component (NTSC only), the output to Monitor 3 (VCR/DVD) is set to the image from that monitor. • When Monitor 1 and Monitor 2 are both on but neither is set to VGA (1920 x 1080 or 1280 x 720), DVI (1920 x 1080 or 1280 x 720), or Component (NTSC only), Monitor 3 is disabled. • If Monitor 2 is disabled, Monitor 3 is fully configurable and independent of Monitor 1.

Setting	Description
Video Format	Specifies the VCR or DVD player's format. For a list of available formats, refer to the information for your system in the previous section of this chapter, Connecting Monitors on page 3-1.
VCR/DVD Record Source	Specifies the video source to be recorded to videotape or DVD. If Far is enabled, the recorded video will switch to the current far site speaker. If both Near and Far are enabled, the recorded video will switch between near and far sites depending on the current speaker. If Content is enabled, any content sent during the call is recorded.
Output Upon Screen Saver Activation	<p>Specifies the screen saver output for a VCR or DVD player.</p> <p>Specifies whether black video or no signal is sent to the VCR or DVD player when the system goes to sleep and the screen saver activates.</p> <p>Select Black if you want to send black video.</p> <p>Select No Signal if you want the VCR or DVD player to react as if it is not connected when the system goes to sleep.</p> <p>Note: (Polycom HDX 8000 series and Polycom HDX 7000 series systems) When VCR/DVD Record Source is set to Monitor 1 Image or Monitor 2 Image, the screen saver setting for Monitor 3 is the same as for that other monitor.</p>

5 Select  and configure these settings for a Polycom HDX 9004:

Setting	Description
Monitor 4	<p>Specifies the fourth monitor's aspect ratio:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off — Select if you do not have a fourth monitor. • 4:3 — Select if you are using a regular TV monitor as the fourth monitor. • 16:9—Select if you are using a wide-screen monitor as the fourth monitor. On the monitor, select the display mode that uniformly stretches the video from side to side, which is usually called Full, Wide screen, or 16x9.
Video Format	<p>Specifies the monitor's format. For a list of available formats, refer to the information for your system in the previous section of this chapter, Connecting Monitors on page 3-1.</p> <p>Note: If you select 16:9, you will also need to set up the monitor for full-screen display. In the monitor's setup menu, choose the setting that stretches the picture uniformly without clipping the edges, which is usually called Full, Wide screen, or 16x9.</p>

Setting	Description
Resolution	Specifies the resolution for the monitor.
Output Upon Screen Saver Activation	<p>Specifies the screen saver output for Monitor 4:</p> <p>Specifies whether black video or no signal is sent to the monitor when the system goes to sleep and the screen saver activates.</p> <p>Select Black if you want to display black video. This is the recommended setting to prevent burn-in for TV monitors.</p> <p>Select No Signal if you want the display to react as if it is not connected when the system goes to sleep. This is the recommended setting for VGA monitors and projectors, as well as Polycom HDX media carts with 1080 displays.</p>
Display Content	Specifies that content is displayed on this monitor.

6 Select  and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
People Video Adjustment, Content Video Adjustment	<p>Specifies the adjustment made to people video and content video images.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None—Preserves the aspect ratio of the source video. The image is scaled (if necessary) to the largest supported resolution that fits on the display without cropping. Extra areas on the display are filled with black borders. • Stretch—Does not preserve aspect ratio. The image is scaled horizontally and vertically to exactly match the resolution of the display. • Zoom—Preserves the aspect ratio of the source video. The image is scaled to exactly match one of the display dimensions while matching or exceeding the other display dimension. The image is centered and cropped.
Display Icons in a Call	Specifies whether to display all on-screen graphics, including icons and help text, during calls.
Screen Saver Wait Time	<p>Specifies how long the system remains awake during periods of inactivity. The default is 3 minutes. If the system requires users to log in, the screen saver timeout also logs out the current user.</p> <p>Setting this option to Off prevents the system from going to sleep. To prevent image burn-in, specify 3 minutes or less.</p> <p>Note: The screen saver feature is disabled during the setup wizard. To prevent image burn-in, complete the setup wizard promptly.</p>

Using Dual Monitor Emulation

Dual Monitor Emulation is available on Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, and Polycom HDX 6000 series systems. Dual Monitor Emulation is designed for rooms or offices with one monitor only. Users see both near and far sites on one monitor in two different windows. During presentations, users see content *and* the near and far sites. What you see during a call can depend on factors such as the Polycom HDX system monitor configuration, the number of sites in the call, and whether content is being shared.



Polycom HDX 9006, Polycom HDX 8000 HD and Polycom HDX 7000 series systems with Hardware Version B, Polycom HDX 7000 series systems with Hardware Version C, and Polycom HDX 6000 series systems will show only two windows in Dual Monitor Emulation.

Examples of Dual Monitor Emulation

Call connects

Near and far site are the same size and appear side by side.



Near site presses Display

Size of far site window increases.




Near site presents to far site

Content, near site, and far site are displayed in dual monitor emulation mode.



Using Dual Monitor Emulation in a Call

During calls using Dual Monitor Emulation, users can press the  **Display** button on the remote control to scroll through the following screen layouts:





- 1 Near and far sites, same size, side by side
- 2 Far site big, near site small
- 3 Near site big, far site small
- 4 Near site, full screen
- 5 Far site, full screen

The last layout viewed is used for the next call.

Configuring Multipoint Viewing Modes

To configure multipoint viewing modes:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Monitors > Multipoint Setup**.
- 2 Configure this setting:

Setting	Description
Multipoint Mode	<p>Video images from multiple sites can be automatically combined on one screen in a display known as <i>continuous presence</i>.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;">  </div> <div> <p>Auto — The view switches between continuous presence and full screen, depending on the interaction between the sites.</p> <p>If multiple sites are talking at the same time, continuous presences is used. If one site speaks uninterrupted for at least 15 seconds, that site appears in full screen.</p> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;">  </div> <div> <p>Discussion — Multiple sites are displayed in continuous presence. The current speaker's image is highlighted.</p> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;">  </div> <div> <p>Presentation — The speaker sees continuous presence while the other sites see the speaker in full screen.</p> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: flex-start; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="margin-right: 10px;">  </div> <div> <p>Full Screen — The site that is speaking is shown in full screen to all other sites. The current speaker sees the previous speaker.</p> </div> </div>

What you see during a multipoint call can depend on factors such as the Polycom HDX system monitor configuration, the number of sites in the call, the speed of the call, whether content is shared, and whether dual monitor emulation is used. The multipoint viewing mode on the host system is the mode used in the call.

During SD multipoint calls that include more than four sites, the Polycom HDX system can display the site that is hosting the conference along with the last three sites where people spoke. In HD multipoint calls, the Polycom HDX 9004 can display up to eight sites in continuous presence. For more information about HD and SD multipoint, refer to [HD and SD Multipoint Calls](#) on page 3-27.

If Polycom StereoSurround™ is enabled, multipoint calls in continuous presence provide a stereo effect. This stereo effect matches a far site's audio to its location on the display.



Points to note about Discussion mode:

- To correctly display Discussion mode, you must select both **Near** and **Far** video sources for Monitor 1.
- To correctly display Discussion mode for multipoint calls with three far sites shown on two monitors, you must select both **Near** and **Far** video sources for Monitor 1, and clear **Far** for Monitor 2.
- You cannot display Discussion mode on Monitor 2.
- For multipoint calls using a Polycom MGC bridge, set **People Video Adjustment** and **Content Video Adjustment** to **None** in order to properly display Discussion mode on a 16x9 monitor.

To select video sources, use the **Display Near Video**, **Display Far Video**, and **Display Content** settings on the Monitors screens.

For more information about multipoint calls, refer to [Experiencing High-Definition Video Conferencing](#) on page 3-25 and [Configuring Multipoint Calling](#) on page 6-3.

Adjusting the Monitor's Color Balance, Sharpness, and Brightness

In most cases, the monitor you connect to your Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, or Polycom HDX 7000 series system may be set to a configuration that is appropriate for video conferencing applications. Depending on your environment and model of monitor, however, the video may exhibit one of these problems:

- Picture is too dark or too bright
- Colors appear faded
- Picture has too much of one color — for example, the picture may appear greenish
- Picture has blocky or softened edge detail

If you notice any of these problems, adjust the monitor's color balance, sharpness, and brightness until the display seems acceptable. Use the video diagnostics test as described in the following steps, or purchase a calibration program DVD tool to help you fine-tune the display settings.



If you are using a Polycom HDX media cart or Polycom HDX Executive Collection, select the Polycom menu option on the monitor to optimize the display for Polycom video.

To adjust the monitor for natural color:

- 1 Go to **System > Diagnostics > Video**.
- 2 Select the color bars icon to display the color bar test screen.
- 3 Adjust the color using the monitor's controls for color, contrast, and brightness. Your monitor may also have controls for tint and temperature.

The colors from left to right should be white, yellow, cyan, green, magenta, red, and blue. Make sure that the white is not tinted red, green, or blue, and that the red is not tinted pink or orange.



Polycom HDX 4000 series displays are calibrated at the factory and do not require color adjustment. You can make the Polycom HDX 4000 series display brighter or dimmer using the + and - controls on the side of the monitor.

- 4 When the colors look right on the test screen, press **Near** until you see video of the room.
- 5 If the color appears natural, you do not need to make further adjustments.

If the color still needs adjustment, use the monitor's controls to make small adjustments until the picture appears natural.

Preventing Monitor Burn-In

Monitors and Polycom HDX systems provide display settings to help prevent image burn-in. Plasma televisions can be particularly vulnerable to this problem. Refer to your monitor's documentation or manufacturer for specific recommendations and instructions. The following guidelines help prevent image burn-in:

- For monitors that support low-power mode when no signal is present on the monitor input, set **Output upon Screen Saver Activation** to **No Signal**. For example, use the **No Signal** setting on VGA monitors and monitors provided by Polycom with native 1080 resolution. Otherwise, set **Output upon Screen Saver Activation** to **Black**.

- Use the monitor's burn-in prevention features, if available.
- Ensure that static images are not displayed for long periods.
- Set the **Screen Saver Wait Time** to 3 minutes or less.
- To keep the screen clear of static images during a call, disable the following settings:
 - **Display Icons in a Call** described on page 3-8
 - **Display Time in Call** described on page 6-2
 - **Far Site Name Display Time** described on page 6-2
- Be aware that meetings that last more than an hour without much movement can have the same effect as a static image.
- Consider decreasing the monitor's sharpness, brightness, and contrast settings if they are set to their maximum values.

Connecting Cameras

Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, and Polycom HDX 7000 series systems provide inputs for multiple PTZ cameras. You can use the RS-232 serial port on the system to control supported non-Polycom cameras or cameras not connected to a main camera input.

Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, and Polycom HDX 6000 series systems *must* have a Polycom EagleEye HD, Polycom EagleEye 1080, or Polycom EagleEye View camera connected to receive signals from the remote control.



Polycom EagleEye HD



Polycom EagleEye 1080



Polycom EagleEye View

Polycom recommends the Polycom EagleEye HD camera for Polycom HDX 9000 series systems. You can also use the Polycom EagleEye HD camera with other systems that do not have the 1080p Resolution option installed.

Polycom recommends the Polycom EagleEye 1080 camera for Polycom HDX systems with the 1080p Resolution option installed if you want to send and receive 1080p video. You can also use the Polycom EagleEye 1080 with systems that do not have the 1080p Resolution option, to see local video in 1080 format. To find out whether your system has the 1080p Resolution option installed, go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Options**.

The Polycom EagleEye View camera is a manual-focus, electronic pan, tilt, and zoom (EPTZ) camera that includes built-in stereo microphones and a privacy shutter. The Polycom EagleEye View is available with the Polycom HDX 6000 HD system as the system camera and the main microphone. You can also use it with the Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, and Polycom HDX 7000 series systems. For more information about the Polycom EagleEye View microphones, refer to [Using the Polycom EagleEye View Microphones](#) on page 4-3.

The Polycom EagleEye View camera can provide 1080p video to the Polycom HDX 9006, Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, and Polycom HDX 6000 series systems.

To use the Polycom EagleEye View camera, systems must be running version 2.6 or later.



Points to note about camera connections:

- When connecting a Polycom EagleEye HD camera to video input 2 on a Polycom HDX 9000 series or Polycom HDX 8000 series system, use only the approved Polycom UL Listed adaptor, Class 2 or LPS not exceeding 12 Volts, 3.33 Amps (part number 1465-52733-040). Verify the polarity of the power supply as shown on the Polycom camera next to the power supply input.
- When connecting a Polycom EagleEye 1080 camera to any input on a Polycom HDX system, use the cable and power supply that come with the camera. You must always use the power supply because the Polycom HDX EagleEye 1080 camera does not receive power from the Polycom HDX system.
- When connecting a Polycom EagleEye View camera, use the brown cable that comes with the camera if you want to use the camera's built-in microphones. Other cables may not carry the audio signals.

Refer to your system's setup sheet and to the *Integrator's Reference Manual for Polycom HDX Systems* for connection details. Refer to the release notes for a list of supported PTZ cameras. If you connect a supported PTZ camera, the system detects the camera type and sets the appropriate configuration. Make sure that the system is powered off before you connect devices to it.

Connecting Cameras to Polycom HDX 9000 Series Systems

The following table shows how you can connect video sources to a Polycom HDX 9006 system.

Video Input Number	Connector	Acceptable Input	Audio Association	Power	Control
1	HDCI	Composite, S-Video, Component	None	Provided for Polycom EagleEye cameras	Camera PTZ, IR Input
	BNC+Serial	Component	None	None	Camera PTZ, IR Input
2	HDCI	Composite, S-Video, Component	None	None	Camera PTZ
3 (VCR/DVD Player)	BNC	Component	Audio Input 3	None	None (Use Serial Port)
4	DVI-I	VGA, DVI	Audio Input 4	None	None (Use Serial Port)

The following table shows how you can connect video sources to a Polycom HDX 9004, Polycom HDX 9002, or Polycom HDX 9001 system.

Video Input Number	Connector	Acceptable Input	Audio Association	Power	Control
1	HDCI	Composite, S-Video, Component, DVI	None	Provided for Polycom EagleEye HD	Camera PTZ, IR Input
2	HDCI	Composite, S-Video, Component	None	None	Camera PTZ
3 (VCR/DVD Player)	BNC	Composite, S-Video, Component (Component is Polycom HDX 9004 only)	Audio Input 3	None	None (Use Serial Port)
4	DVI-I	VGA, DVI	Audio Input 4 (Polycom HDX 9004)	None	None (Use Serial Port)
5 Polycom HDX 9004	DVI-I	VGA, DVI	None	None	None (Use Serial Port)

Connecting Cameras to Polycom HDX 8000 Series Systems

The following table shows how you can connect video sources to a Polycom HDX 8000 series system.

Video Input Number	Connector	Acceptable Input	Audio Association	Power	Control
1	HDCI	Composite, S-Video, Component	None	Provided for Polycom EagleEye HD	Camera PTZ, IR Input
2	HDCI	Composite, S-Video, Component	None	None	Camera PTZ
3 (VCR/DVD Player)	S-Video	Composite, S-Video	Audio Input 3	None	None
4 (Content)	DVI-I	VGA, DVI	Audio Input 4	None	None

Connecting Cameras to Polycom HDX 7000 Series Systems

The following table shows how you can connect video sources to a Polycom HDX 7000 series system.

Video Input Number	Connector	Acceptable Input	Audio Association	Power	Control
1	HDCI	Composite, S-Video, Component	None	Provided for Polycom EagleEye HD	Camera PTZ, IR Input
2 (VCR/DVD Player)	S-Video	Composite, S-Video	Audio Input 2	None	None
3 (Content)	DVI-I	VGA, DVI	Audio Input 3	None	None

Connecting Cameras to Polycom HDX 6000 Series Systems

The following table shows how you can connect video sources to a Polycom HDX 6000 series system.

Video Input Number	Connector	Acceptable Input	Audio Association	Power	Control
1	HDCI	Composite, S-Video, Component	None	Provided for Polycom EagleEye HD	Camera PTZ, IR Input
2 (Content)	DVI-I	VGA, DVI	3.5mm Input	None	None

Connecting Cameras to Polycom HDX 4000 Series Systems

The following table shows how you can connect video sources to a Polycom HDX 4000 series system.


Video Input	Connector	Acceptable Input	Audio Association
Built-In Camera	HDCI	Component (Polycom HDX 4000 series built-in camera)	None
Content	DVI	VGA, DVI	3.5mm Input

Configuring Camera Settings and Video Quality Options


To configure camera and video settings:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Cameras > Camera Settings**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the Cameras screen:

Setting	Description
Camera 1	<p>Specifies the camera's aspect ratio:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4:3 — Select if you are using a camera in standard mode. • 16:9 — Select if you are using a camera in wide-screen mode. <p>This setting also configures the following SD cameras to produce the corresponding video format:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Polycom PowerCam™ Plus • Polycom PowerCam • Sony EVI-D100 • Sony BRC-300 <p>Specifies the camera's format. For a list of available formats, refer to the information for your system in the previous section of this chapter, Connecting Cameras on page 3-13.</p>
Name	Specifies a name and icon for the camera.
Video Quality	<p>Specifies Motion or Sharpness for the video input. The default is Sharpness.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motion — This setting is for showing people or other video with motion. • Sharpness — The picture will be sharp and clear, but moderate to heavy motion at low call rates can cause some frames to be dropped. Sharpness is available in point-to-point H.263 and H.264 calls only. It is required for HD calls between 832 kbps and 2 Mbps.
Detect Camera Polycom HDX 9006 Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 9001 Polycom HDX 8000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 Polycom HDX 6000 HD	Detects any supported PTZ camera connected to Polycom HDX system video input 1 and configures the camera settings accordingly.


3 Select  and configure these settings for Polycom HDX 9000 series and Polycom HDX 8000 series systems:


Setting	Description
Camera 2	<p>Specifies the camera's aspect ratio:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4:3 — Select if you are using a regular camera. • 16:9 — Select if you are using a wide-screen camera. <p>This setting also configures the following SD cameras to produce the corresponding video format:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Polycom PowerCam Plus • Polycom PowerCam • Sony EVI-D100 • Sony BRC-300 <p>Specifies the camera's format. For a list of available formats, refer to the information for your system in the previous section of this chapter, Connecting Cameras on page 3-13.</p>
Name	Specifies a name and icon for the camera.
Source	Specifies whether the camera source is People or Content . Video sources specified as Content are sent at a higher resolution and lower frame rate.
Video Quality	<p>Specifies Motion or Sharpness for the video input.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motion — This setting is for showing people or other video with motion. • Sharpness — The picture will be sharp and clear, but moderate to heavy motion at low call rates can cause some frames to be dropped. Sharpness is available in point-to-point H.263 and H.264 calls only.
Detect Camera	Detects any supported PTZ camera connected to Polycom HDX system video input 2 and configures the camera settings accordingly.


- 4 Select  and configure these settings for Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, and Polycom HDX 7000 series systems:


Setting	Description
Camera 3 (Camera 2 on Polycom HDX 7000 series)	<p>Specifies the VCR or DVD player's aspect ratio:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 4:3 — Select if you are using a VCR or DVD player in standard mode. 16:9 — Select if you are using a VCR or DVD player in wide-screen mode. <p>Specifies the VCR or DVD player's format. For a list of available formats, refer to the information for your system in the previous section of this chapter, Connecting Cameras on page 3-13.</p>
Name	Specifies a name and icon for the VCR or DVD player.
Source	<p>Specifies whether the video source is People or Content. Video sources specified as Content are sent at a higher resolution and lower frame rate.</p> <p>Note: If you change this setting on a Polycom HDX 7000 series system, the Source for Camera 3 is automatically changed to match this setting.</p>
Video Quality	<p>Specifies Motion or Sharpness for the video input.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Motion — This setting is for showing people or other video with motion. Sharpness — The picture will be sharp and clear, but moderate to heavy motion at low call rates can cause some frames to be dropped. Sharpness is available in point-to-point H.263 and H.264 calls only.
Detect Camera	<p>Detects any supported PTZ camera connected to Polycom HDX system video input 3 (input 2 on Polycom HDX 7000 series), and configures the camera settings accordingly. This button appears only when RS-232 Mode is set to Camera PTZ and Camera Control is set to Camera 3 (Camera 2 on Polycom HDX 7000 series) for one of the serial ports.</p>

- 5 Select  and configure these settings for Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, and Polycom HDX 6000 series systems:

Setting	Description
Camera 4 (Camera 3 on Polycom HDX 7000 series, Camera 2 on Polycom HDX 6000 series)	Resolution and aspect ratio are detected automatically.
Name	Specifies a name and icon for the computer or video source.
Source	Specifies whether the video source is People or Content . Video sources specified as Content are sent at a higher resolution and lower frame rate. Note: If you change this setting on a Polycom HDX 7000 series system, the Source for Camera 2 is automatically changed to match this setting.
Video Quality	Specifies Motion or Sharpness for the video input. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motion — This setting is for showing people or other video with motion. • Sharpness — The picture will be sharp and clear, but moderate to heavy motion at low call rates can cause some frames to be dropped. Sharpness is available in point-to-point H.263 and H.264 calls only.
Detect Camera Polycom HDX 9006 Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 9001 Polycom HDX 8000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 HD Polycom HDX 7000	Detects any supported PTZ camera connected to Polycom HDX system video input 4 (input 3 on Polycom HDX 7000 series), and configures the camera settings accordingly. This button appears only when RS-232 Mode is set to Camera PTZ and Camera Control is set to Camera 4 (Camera 3 on Polycom HDX 7000 series) for one of the serial ports.
Horizontal Position, Phase, Vertical Position Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 9001 Polycom HDX 6000 HD	Adjusts the VGA Input settings. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Select Horizontal Position, Phase, or Vertical Position. 2 Press the navigation buttons on the remote control to adjust the setting. 3 Press  Back on the remote control to accept the setting.

6 Select  and configure these settings for a Polycom HDX 9004:

Setting	Description
Camera 5	Resolution and aspect ratio are detected automatically.
Name	Specifies a name and icon for the computer or video source.
Source	Specifies whether the video source is People or Content . Video sources specified as Content are sent at a higher resolution and lower frame rate.
Video Quality	Specifies Motion or Sharpness for the video input. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Motion — This setting is for showing people or other video with motion. Sharpness — The picture will be sharp and clear, but motion will not be smooth. Choose this setting for document cameras. Sharpness is available in point-to-point H.263 calls only.
Detect Camera	Detects any supported PTZ camera connected to Polycom HDX system video input 5, and configures the camera settings accordingly. This button appears only when RS-232 Mode is set to Camera PTZ and Camera Control is set to Camera 5 for one of the serial ports.
Horizontal Position, Phase, Vertical Position	Adjusts the VGA Input settings. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select Horizontal Position, Phase, or Vertical Position. Press the navigation buttons on the remote control to adjust the setting. Press  Back on the remote control to accept the setting.

7 Select  and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Far Control of Near Camera	Specifies whether the far site can pan, tilt, or zoom the near-site camera. When this option is selected, a user at the far site can control the framing and angle of the camera for the best view of the near site.
Backlight Compensation	Specifies whether to have the camera automatically adjust for a bright background. Backlight compensation is best used in situations where the subject appears darker than the background.
Primary Camera	Specifies which camera is the main camera. The primary camera is active when the Polycom HDX system powers up. Its source is automatically set to People.

Setting	Description
Camera Pan Direction	Specifies the direction the camera moves when using the arrow buttons on the remote control.
Quality Preference	<p>Specifies the bandwidth split for People and Content video.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • People—10% Content, 90% People • Both—50% Content, 50% People • Content—90% Content, 10% People <p>Notes: In a multipoint call, the MCU setting determines the People and Content video rates, not the system sending the content.</p> <p>This setting does not apply if Dynamic People/Content Bandwidth is enabled or automatic bandwidth adjustment is enabled using the API.</p> <p>This setting applies only to calls of 128 kbps or higher.</p>
Dynamic People/Content Bandwidth	Specifies whether the system automatically adjusts the bandwidth allocation for people and content in point-to-point H.323 calls. This setting maintains equal image quality for People and Content in the call.
Power Frequency	<p>Specifies the power line frequency for your system.</p> <p>In most cases, the system defaults to the correct power line frequency, based on the video standard used in the country where the system is located. This setting allows you to adapt the system in areas where the power line frequency does not match the video standard used. You may need to change this setting to avoid flicker from the fluorescent lights in your conference room.</p> <p>Changing this setting causes the system to restart. After the system restarts, you might need to select Detect Camera.</p>
Send Content When PC Connects Polycom HDX 9006 Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 9001 Polycom HDX 8000 HD Polycom HDX 6000 HD	Specifies whether to send content automatically when a computer is connected to a designated content input.
Detect Cameras Polycom HDX 9006 Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 9001 Polycom HDX 8000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 HD Polycom HDX 7000	Detects any supported PTZ cameras connected to Polycom HDX system video inputs.

Configuring Advanced Camera Settings

You can use the system's web interface to configure or restore the following Polycom EagleEye HD camera settings:

- Brightness
- Black Level
- Color Saturation

You can use the system's web interface to configure or restore the White Balance setting for the Polycom EagleEye HD or Polycom EagleEye View.

To adjust Polycom EagleEye HD camera's brightness, black level, or color saturation using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 Make sure that the system and camera are powered on and awake.
- 2 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 3 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 4 Go to **Admin Settings > Cameras**.
- 5 If Model is not set to Polycom EagleEye HD for the appropriate camera(s), click the **Detect Camera** button.
- 6 Click **Advanced**.
- 7 Select values for brightness, black level, and color saturation.
- 8 Click **Update**.

To restore the Polycom EagleEye HD or Polycom EagleEye View camera's default settings using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 Make sure that the system and camera are powered on and awake.
- 2 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 3 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 4 Go to **Admin Settings > Cameras**.
- 5 Click **Restore**. White Balance, Brightness, Black Level, and Color Saturation are returned to their default values.

To set the Polycom EagleEye HD or Polycom EagleEye View white balance:

You can set the white balance to one of several fixed values, or you can set it manually.



White balance settings require particular camera and system firmware versions. For more information, contact your Polycom distributor or refer to the Knowledge Base in the Support section of the Polycom web site.

- 1 Make sure that the system and camera are powered on and awake.
- 2 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 3 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 4 Go to **Admin Settings > Cameras**.
- 5 If Model is not set to Polycom EagleEye HD or Polycom EagleEye View for the appropriate camera(s), click the **Detect Camera** button.
- 6 Select a value for White Balance.
 - **Auto:** Polycom recommends this setting for most situations. It calculates the best white balance setting based on lighting conditions in the room.
 - **Pre-defined values:** Use one of the pre-defined color temperature settings to provide acceptable color reproduction.
 - **Manual:** Use the Manual setting for rooms where the Auto and fixed settings do not provide acceptable color reproduction. Set the White Balance to **Manual**. Then fill the camera view with a flat white surface, such as a piece of paper, and click **Calibrate**.
- 7 Click **Update**.

Configuring Camera Presets

Camera presets are stored camera positions that you can create ahead of time or during a call.

Presets allow users to:



- Automatically point a camera at pre-defined locations in a room.
- Select a video source.

If your camera supports pan, tilt, and zoom movement, and it is set to People, you can create up to 100 preset camera positions for it. Each preset stores the camera number, its zoom level, and the direction it points (if appropriate). Presets remain in effect until you delete or change them.

To store a preset:

- 1 If you are in a call, press **Near** or **Far** then choose a near-site or far-site camera or other video source.
- 2 If you selected a camera that supports electronic pan, tilt, and zoom, you can adjust the camera's position:
 - Press **Zoom** to zoom the camera out or in.
 - Press the arrow buttons on the remote control to move the camera up, down, left, or right.
- 3 Press and hold a number to store the preset position.
To store a double-digit preset (10-99), hold the second number down.
Any existing preset stored at the number you enter is replaced.

To delete all presets on a Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, or Polycom HDX 6000 series system:

- 1 If a call is connected, press **Near** to choose a near-site video source.
- 2 Press  **Preset** on the remote control.
- 3 Press and hold  **Delete** to delete all presets.

To delete all presets on a Polycom HDX 4000 series:

- 1 Press **Near** on the keypad.
- 2 Press and hold  **Delete** to delete all presets.

Experiencing High-Definition Video Conferencing

Polycom HDX 9002, Polycom HDX 9004, Polycom HDX 9006, Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 HD, Polycom HDX 6000 HD, and Polycom HDX 4000 HD systems offer the following high-definition (HD) capabilities:

- Send people or content video to the far site in HD
- Receive and display video from the far site in HD
- Display near-site video in HD

Sending Video in High Definition

Polycom HDX systems with HD capability can send video in wide-screen, HD format. For information about the resolution and frame rate for video configured as People, refer to [Appendix C, Call Speeds and Resolutions](#). The frame rate varies for video configured as Content, but it can reach a maximum of 30 fps at high call rates.

To send video in HD format, use an HD camera such as the Polycom EagleEye HD, Polycom EagleEye 1080, or Polycom EagleEye View, and a Polycom HDX system capable of sending 720p or better video.

Receiving and Displaying Video in High Definition

When the far site sends HD video, Polycom HDX systems with HD capability and an HD monitor can display the video in wide-screen, HD format. The HD 720 format supported by these systems is 1280 x 720, progressive scan format (720p). Polycom HDX systems with 1080 capability can receive 1080p progressive format and can display 1080p progressive or 1080i interlaced format.

Near-site video is displayed in HD format when you use an HD video source and an HD monitor. However, near-site video is displayed in SD if the system is in an SD or lower-resolution call.



Points to note about viewing 1080 video on Polycom HDX 9006, Polycom HDX 8000 series, and Polycom HDX 7000 series systems:

- Camera 1 and Camera 2 support 1080p (29.97/30 fps for NSTC systems, 25 fps for PAL systems) and 1080i (59.94/60 fps for NTSC, 50 fps for PAL) using Component format.
- For 1080 input from camera 2, configure the camera as a People source on the Polycom HDX system.
- Monitor 1 and Monitor 2 support 1080i (60 fps for NTSC, 50 fps for PAL) using DVI-D or Component format. They support 1080p (60 fps for NTSC, 50 fps for PAL) using DVI-D, VGA, or Component format.

Points to note about viewing 1080 video on Polycom HDX 6000 series systems:

- Camera 1 supports 1080p (29.97/30 fps for NSTC systems, 25 fps for PAL systems) and 1080i (59.94/60 fps for NTSC, 50 fps for PAL) using Component format.
- For 1080 input from camera 2, configure the camera as a People source on the Polycom HDX system.
- Monitor 1 supports 1080i (60 fps for NTSC, 50 fps for PAL) using DVI-D or HDMI format. It supports 1080p (60 fps for NTSC, 50 fps for PAL) using DVI-D or HDMI format.

HD and SD Multipoint Calls

With the MPplus 4 Port option, Polycom HDX 4000 HD, Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 9002, Polycom HDX 9004, and Polycom HDX 9006 systems can host HD multipoint calls that include up to four sites. During this type of HD multipoint call, or SD multipoint call, all sites can be displayed in continuous presence. With the MPplus 4 Port option, Polycom HDX 7000 HD systems can host SD multipoint calls that include up to four sites displayed in continuous presence.



With the MPplus 8 Port option, Polycom HDX 9004 systems can host multipoint calls that include up to eight sites. Polycom HDX 9004 systems can display all eight sites in continuous presence, but only when the call is in HD. If the call is not in HD for any reason, only four sites or fewer can be displayed. For HD continuous presence, Polycom recommends setting **Multipoint Mode** to **Discussion**.



Requirements for an HD multipoint call:

- The call must be hosted by a Polycom HDX 9002 or Polycom HDX 9004 system running version 2.0 or later; a Polycom HDX 8000 series or Polycom HDX 4000 HD system running version 2.5 or later; a Polycom HDX 9006 system running 2.6 or later, or a conferencing platform that supports HD such as Polycom RMX 1000 or Polycom RMX 2000.
- The Polycom HDX system host must have the appropriate options installed.
- All systems in the call must support HD (720p at 30 fps) and H.264.
- The call rate must be high enough to support HD resolution, as shown in [Appendix C, Call Speeds and Resolutions](#).
- Transcoding must be disabled.
- The call cannot be cascaded.
- The call can only include up to six sites if AES Encryption is enabled. When AES Encryption is enabled in calls with seven or eight sites, SIF/CIF video is sent.



Requirements for an SD multipoint call:

- The Polycom HDX system host must have the appropriate options installed.
- All sites in the call must support SD (30 fps) and H.264.
- Transcoding must be disabled.
- The call cannot be cascaded.

Polycom HDX 9001, Polycom HDX 7000, Polycom HDX 6000 series, and Polycom HDX 4000 systems can participate in SD multipoint calls, but they cannot host HD or SD multipoint calls.

For more information about multipoint calls, refer to [Configuring Multipoint Viewing Modes](#) on page 3-10 and [Configuring Multipoint Calling](#) on page 6-3.

Microphones and Speakers

Connecting Audio Input

Make sure that the system is powered off before you connect devices to it.

Connecting Audio Input to Polycom HDX 9000 Series Systems

The following table shows the acceptable input levels and video associations for the audio inputs on a Polycom HDX 9000 series system.

Audio Input Number	Connector	Acceptable Input Source Levels	Video Association
1 (Main Audio) Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 9001	Phoenix	Mono/Stereo Microphone or Line Level (phantom power is available when set to Microphone)	Not associated with any particular video input. Intended as microphone input; not included in audio mix of output 1.
1 (Main Audio) Polycom HDX 9006 only	Phoenix	Line Level	Not associated with any particular video input. Not included in audio mix of output 1.
3 (VCR/DVD Player)	Phoenix	Mono/Stereo Line Level	Video Input 3 (Audio is disabled until camera 3 is selected).
4 (Content) Polycom HDX 9006 and Polycom HDX 9004 only	Phoenix	Mono/Stereo Line Level	Video Input 4 (Audio is disabled until camera 4 is selected).

Connecting Audio Input to Polycom HDX 8000 Series Systems

The following table shows the acceptable input levels and video associations for the audio inputs on a Polycom HDX 8000 series system.

Audio Input Number	Connector	Acceptable Input Source Levels	Video Association
1 (Main Audio)	RCA	Mono/Stereo Line Level	Not associated with any particular video input. Intended as microphone input; not included in audio mix of output 1.
3 (VCR/DVD Player)	RCA	Mono/Stereo Line Level	Video Input 3 (Audio is disabled until camera 3 is selected).
4 (Content)	3.5mm	Mono/Stereo Line Level	Video Input 4 (Audio is disabled until camera 4 is selected).

Connecting Audio Input to Polycom HDX 7000 Series Systems

The following table shows the acceptable input levels and video associations for the audio inputs on a Polycom HDX 7000 series system.

Audio Input Number	Connector	Acceptable Input Source Levels	Video Association
1 (Main Audio)	RCA	Mono/Stereo Line Level	Not associated with any particular video input. Intended as microphone input; not included in audio mix of output 1.
2 (VCR/DVD Player)	RCA	Mono/Stereo Line Level	Video Input 2 (Audio is disabled until camera 2 is selected).
3 (Content)	3.5mm	Mono/Stereo Line Level	Video Input 3 (Audio is disabled until camera 3 is selected).

Connecting Audio Input to Polycom HDX 6000 Series Systems

The following table shows the acceptable input levels and video associations for the audio inputs on a Polycom HDX 6000 series system.

Audio Input	Connector	Acceptable Input Source Levels	Video Association
Content	3.5mm	Mono/Stereo Line Level	Video Input 2 (Audio is disabled until camera 2 is selected).

Connecting Devices to the Polycom HDX Microphone Input

To pick up audio from your site, you must connect a microphone to the Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, and Polycom HDX 6000 series systems. Refer to your system's setup sheet for connection details.

Connecting Polycom HDX Table or Ceiling Microphones

Polycom microphones each contain three microphone elements for 360° coverage. You can connect multiple Polycom microphones to a Polycom HDX system.

For best audio:

- Place the microphone on a hard, flat surface (table, wall, or ceiling) away from obstructions, so the sound will be directed into the microphone elements properly.
- Place the microphone near the people closest to the monitor.
- In large conference rooms, you may need more than one microphone. Each Polycom microphone covers a 3-6 foot radius, depending on the noise level and acoustics in the room.

Using the Polycom EagleEye View Microphones

The Polycom EagleEye View camera includes built-in stereo microphones. For best audio when using the Polycom EagleEye View:

- Enable Polycom StereoSurround
- Place the camera at least 1 ft. away from any walls to minimize boundary effects.
- Ideally the people speaking should be no than 7 feet away from the Polycom EagleEye View. The maximum distance covered depends on the noise level and acoustics in the room. If you connect a Polycom microphone, Polycom SoundStation, or Polycom SoundStructure® to the HDX microphone input while a Polycom EagleEye View is connected to the system, the Polycom EagleEye View camera's built-in microphones are automatically disabled.
- Polycom recommends connecting other audio input devices in conference rooms larger than 12 ft by 15 ft

Connecting a Polycom SoundStation IP 7000 Phone

When you connect a Polycom SoundStation IP 7000 conference phone to a Polycom HDX system, the conference phone becomes another way to dial audio or video calls. The conference phone also operates as a microphone, and as a speaker in audio-only calls. For more information, refer to the *Integration*

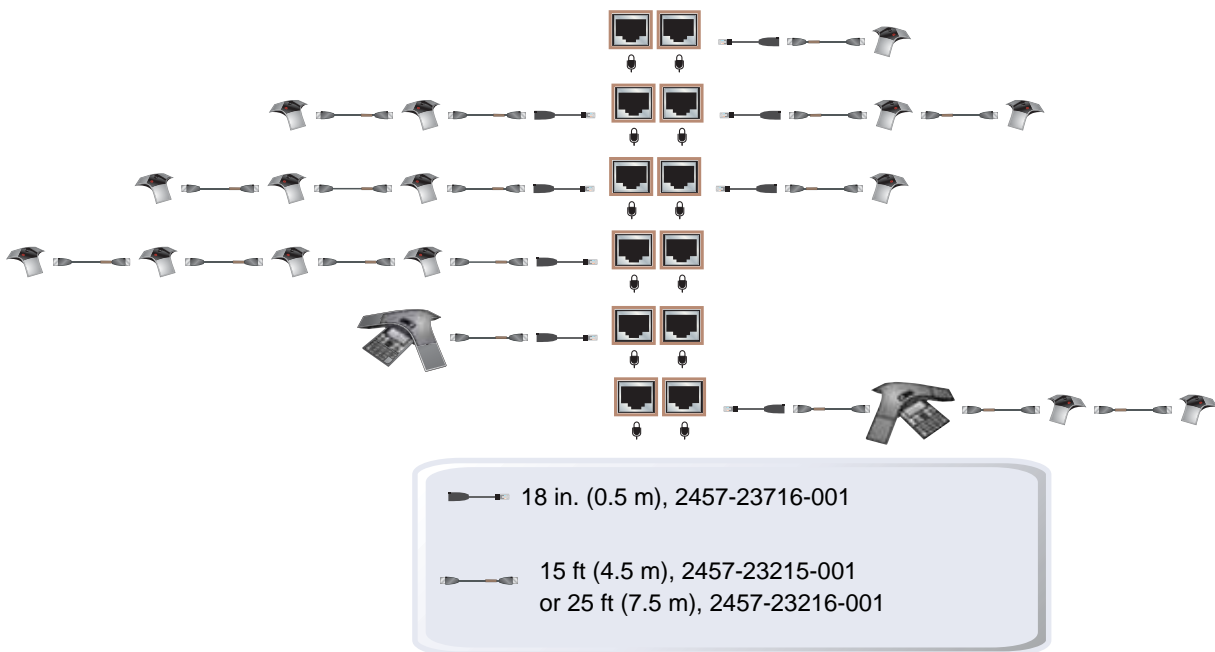
Guide for the Polycom SoundStation IP 7000 Phone and Polycom HDX Systems in Non-VoIP Environments and User Guide for the Polycom SoundStation IP 7000 Phone and Polycom HDX Systems in a Non-VoIP Environment on the Polycom web site.

Connecting Devices to the Polycom HDX 9000 Series Microphone Input

The Polycom HDX 9000 series systems can support:

- Up to four Polycom HDX microphones (table or ceiling type)
- One SoundStation IP 7000 phone and up to two Polycom HDX microphones
- One SoundStructure C-Series device and up to four Polycom HDX microphones
- Polycom EagleEye View with microphones enabled

The following diagram shows several microphone connection options for the Polycom HDX 9000 series. For information about additional cable lengths, refer to the *Integrator's Reference Manual for Polycom HDX Systems*.

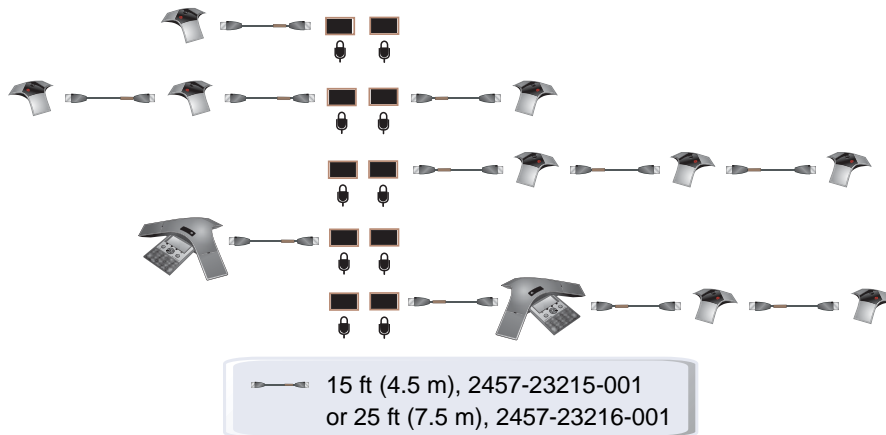


Connecting Devices to the Polycom HDX 8000 Series Microphone Input

The Polycom HDX 8000 series system can support:

- Up to three Polycom HDX microphones (table or ceiling type)
- One SoundStation IP 7000 phone and up to two Polycom HDX microphones
- One SoundStructure C-Series device and up to four Polycom HDX microphones
- Polycom EagleEye View with microphones enabled

The following diagram shows several microphone connection options for the Polycom HDX 8000 series system.



Connecting Devices to the Polycom HDX 7000 Series Microphone Input

The Polycom HDX 7000 series systems can support:

- Up to two Polycom HDX microphones (table or ceiling type)
- One SoundStation IP 7000 phone and up to two Polycom HDX microphones
- Polycom EagleEye View with microphones enabled

The following diagram shows several microphone connection options for the Polycom HDX 7000 series system.



Connecting Devices to the Polycom HDX 6000 Series Microphone Input

The Polycom HDX 6000 series systems can support:

- One Polycom HDX microphone (table or ceiling type)
- One SoundStation IP 7000 phone and up to two Polycom HDX microphones
- Polycom EagleEye View with microphones enabled

The following diagram shows several microphone connection options for the Polycom HDX 6000 series system.



Connecting Devices to the Polycom HDX 4000 Series Microphone Input







The Polycom HDX 4000 series provides built-in microphones. The Polycom HDX 4000 series system also provides a headset microphone input on the side panel of the monitor. The built-in microphones are disabled when a headset is connected.

The Polycom HDX 4000 series systems can support:

- Up to three Polycom HDX microphones (table or ceiling type)
- One SoundStation IP 7000 phone and up to two Polycom HDX microphones

Placing Polycom Microphones to Send Stereo from Your Site

The following illustrations show microphone placement examples for different room layouts.

Number of Microphones with Stereo Enabled	Long Table	Wide Table
One	Mic 1 set to Left+Right 	Mic 1 set to Left+Right 
Two	Mic 1 set to Left+Right Mic 2 set to Left+Right 	Mic 1 set to Left Mic 2 set to Right 
Three	Mic 1 set to Left+Right Mic 2 set to Left+Right Mic 3 set to Left+Right 	Mic 1 set to Left Mic 2 set to Left+Right Mic 3 set to Right 
X – Not Used ○ – Left Channel ● – Right Channel		

Left and right channel assignments depend on the settings that you select on the Stereo Settings screen. If Autorotation is enabled for a microphone, the system automatically assigns active channels for the microphone. Make sure that microphones with Autorotation disabled are oriented as shown in the following illustration.



After you place the microphones, you will need to configure the system to send stereo as described in [StereoSurround Settings](#) on page 4-18.

Polycom Microphone Lights

The following table describes the behavior of the microphone lights on a Polycom HDX table microphone.

Microphone Light	Status
Off	Not in a call
Green	In a call, mute off
Red	Mute on
Amber	Firmware upload

Connecting Non-Polycom Microphones or a Mixer to a Polycom HDX System

You can connect non-Polycom microphones directly to audio input 1 on a Polycom HDX 9004, Polycom HDX 9002, or Polycom HDX 9001 system, or through a line-level mixer to the AUX audio input on any Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, or Polycom HDX 7000 series system. For more information about configuring these non-Polycom microphones, refer to [Settings for Non-Polycom Microphones](#) on page 4-21.

You can connect several microphones to a Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, or Polycom HDX 6000 series system through a Polycom audio mixer. The SoundStructure C-Series mixer connects to the digital microphone connector on a Polycom HDX system, and no configuration is necessary.

The Polycom Vortex® mixer connects directly to audio input 1 on a Polycom HDX 9000 series system or the AUX audio input on a Polycom HDX 8000 series or Polycom HDX 7000 series system. For more information about configuring the Polycom HDX system to use a Polycom Vortex mixer, refer to [Polycom HDX System Settings for a Polycom Vortex Mixer](#) on page 4-20.

Connecting a Polycom audio mixer to Polycom HDX systems provides flexibility in audio setup. For example, it allows you to provide a microphone for each call participant in a boardroom. Refer to the *Integrator's Reference Manual for Polycom HDX Systems* for connection details.



Points to note about the SoundStructure digital mixer:

- Connect a SoundStructure digital mixer using the digital microphone input on the Polycom HDX system.
- Adjusting the volume on a Polycom HDX system changes the volume of the SoundStructure digital mixer that is connected.
- The following configuration settings are not available on a Polycom HDX system when a SoundStructure digital mixer is connected: Audio input 1 (Line In), Bass, Treble, Enable Polycom Microphones, Enable Live Music Mode, and Enable Keyboard Noise Reduction.
- The Polycom HDX system Line Output is muted when a SoundStructure digital mixer is connected.
- All echo cancellation is performed by the SoundStructure digital mixer.

Connecting Audio Output

You must connect at least one speaker to Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, and Polycom HDX 6000 series systems in order to hear audio. You can use the speakers built into the main monitor, or you can connect an external speaker system such as the Polycom StereoSurround kit to provide more volume and richer sound in large rooms.

When you connect a SoundStation IP 7000 conference phone to a Polycom HDX system, the conference phone becomes another way to dial audio or video calls. The conference phone also operates as a microphone, and as a speaker in audio-only calls. For more information, refer to the *Integration Guide for the Polycom SoundStation IP 7000 Phone and Polycom HDX Systems in Non-VoIP Environments* and *User Guide for the Polycom SoundStation IP 7000 Phone and Polycom HDX Systems in a Non-VoIP Environment* on the Polycom web site.

Refer to your system's setup sheet for connection details. Make sure that the system is powered off before you connect devices to it.

Connecting Speakers to Polycom HDX 9000 Series Systems

The following table describes the audio outputs of the Polycom HDX 9000 series system.

Audio Output Number	Connector	Output Type	Audio Mix Routed to the Output
1 (Main Audio)	Phoenix	Mono/Stereo	System tones and sound effects + Audio from the far site + Content audio connected to audio input 3 (and 4 for Polycom HDX 9004)
3 (VCR/DVD Player)	Phoenix	Mono/Stereo	Near-site talkers + Audio from the far site + Content audio connected to audio input 3 (and 4 for Polycom HDX 9004)

Connecting Speakers to Polycom HDX 8000 Series or Polycom HDX 7000 Series Systems

The following table describes the audio outputs of the Polycom HDX 8000 series or Polycom HDX 7000 series system.

Audio Output Number	Connector	Output Type	Audio Mix Routed to the Output
1 (Main Audio)	RCA	Mono/Stereo	System tones and sound effects + Audio from the far site + Content audio connected to audio input 3
3 (VCR/DVD Player)	RCA	Mono/Stereo	Near-site talkers + Audio from the far site + Content audio connected to audio input 3

Connecting Speakers to Polycom HDX 6000 Series Systems

The following table describes the audio outputs of the Polycom HDX 6000 series system.

Audio Output	Connector	Output Type	Audio Mix Routed to the Output
Main Audio (Digital)	HDMI	Mono/Stereo	System tones and sound effects + Audio from the far site + Content audio connected to PC audio input
Main Audio (Analog)	RCA	Mono/Stereo	System tones and sound effects + Audio from the far site + Content audio connected to PC audio input

When the video output format is set to HDMI, you can get audio output from the HDMI or RCA connectors. When the video output format is set to DVI, you can get audio output from the RCA connectors only.

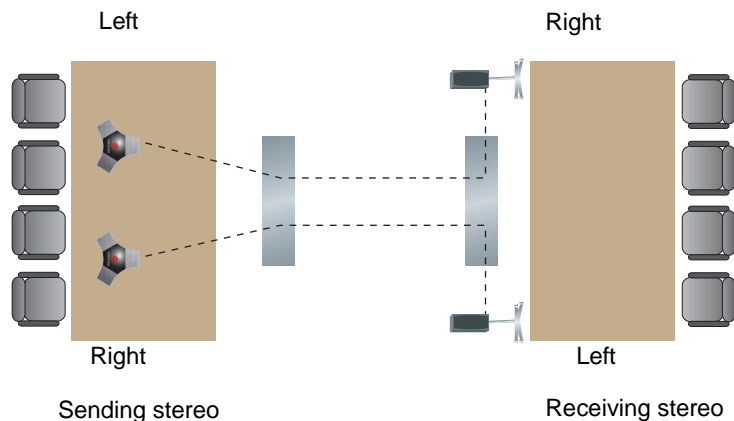
Connecting Speakers or Headphones to Polycom HDX 4000 Series Systems

You can connect desktop speakers to provide better audio for the Polycom HDX 4000 series if you place it in a large room, or you can connect headphones to listen to calls privately. The Polycom HDX 4000 series connector for desktop speakers or headphones is on the side panel of the monitor. The built-in speakers are disabled when desktop speakers or headphones are connected.

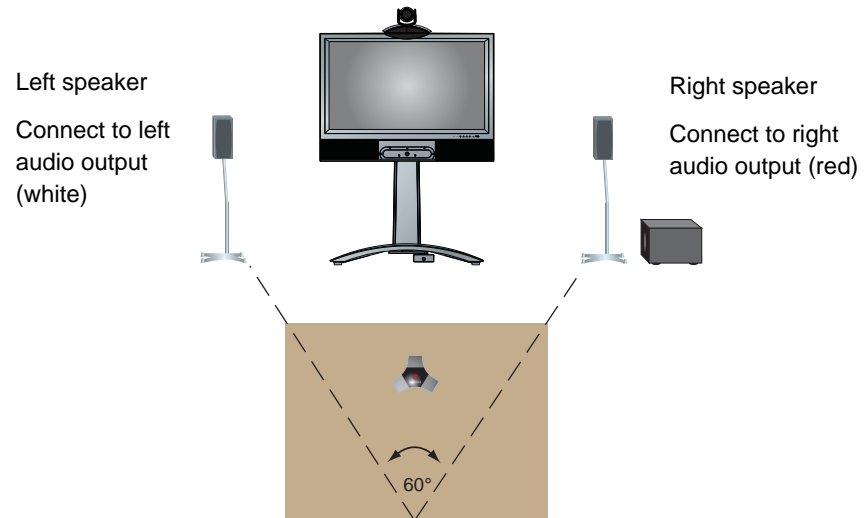
Placing Speakers to Play Stereo from Far Sites

The Polycom StereoSurround kit is designed for use with Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, and Polycom HDX 6000 series systems. It includes two speakers and a subwoofer.

When you set up the system for StereoSurround, the left microphone and speaker should be on the left from the local room perspective. Place the speaker connected to the audio system's right channel on the right side of the system, and the other speaker on the left side. The system reverses the left and right channels for the far site, as shown in the following illustration. This ensures that the sound comes from the appropriate side of the room.



For best results, place the speakers about 60° apart as seen from the center of the conference table.



If you are using a subwoofer, place it beside a wall or in a corner near the speakers.

Setting the Speaker Volume

To set the volume of an external speaker system:

- 1 Go to **System > Diagnostics > Audio > Speaker Test**.
- 2 Start the speaker test.
- 3 Adjust the volume of the speaker system. From the center of the room the test tone should be as loud as a person speaking loudly, about 80-90 dBA on a sound pressure level meter.

Configuring Audio Settings

General Audio Settings



Some audio settings are unavailable when a SoundStructure digital mixer is connected to the Polycom HDX system. For more information, refer to [Connecting Non-Polycom Microphones or a Mixer to a Polycom HDX System](#) on page 4-9.

To configure general audio settings:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Audio > Audio Settings**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the Audio Settings screen:

Setting	Description
Sound Effects Volume	Sets the volume level of the ring tone and user alert tones.
Incoming Video Call	Specifies the ring tone used for incoming calls.
User Alert Tones	Specifies the tone used for user alerts.
Mute Auto Answer Calls	Specifies whether to mute incoming calls. Incoming calls are muted by default until you press the mute button on the microphone or on the remote control.
Enable Built-In Microphones Polycom HDX 4000 HD Polycom HDX 4000	Specifies whether the built-in microphones of the Polycom HDX 4000 series display are enabled.
Enable Polycom Microphones	Specifies whether microphones attached to the system's microphone input are enabled.

Setting	Description
Enable Live Music Mode	Specifies whether the system transmits audio using a configuration that best reproduces live music picked up by microphones. Note: Noise suppression, automatic gain control, and keyboard noise reduction are disabled when this setting is enabled.
Enable Keyboard Noise Reduction	Specifies whether the system mutes audio from any site when keyboard tapping sounds are detected but no one is talking at that site. Note: Live Music Mode is disabled when this setting is enabled. Keyboard Noise Reduction is not available if an audio mixer is used.
Enable Polycom EagleEye View Microphones	Specifies whether the Polycom EagleEye View built-in microphones are enabled.

To configure audio input/output settings:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Audio > Inputs/Outputs**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the Audio Input screen:

Setting	Description
<p>Input Type Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 9001</p>	<p>Specifies the type of equipment that is connected to audio input 1. (Polycom HDX 9000 series) Choose Line Input unless you have connected microphones that do not have an external preamplifier. Choose Microphone for most wired microphones. When this is set to Microphone, the input provides 48V of phantom power.</p>
<p>Input Type Level Polycom HDX 9006 Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 9001 Polycom HDX 8000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 HD Polycom HDX 7000</p>	<p>Sets the volume level for audio input 1.</p>
<p>Echo Canceller Polycom HDX 9006 Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 9001 Polycom HDX 8000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 HD Polycom HDX 7000</p>	<p>Lets you specify whether to use the system's built-in echo canceller with audio input 1. Do not enable this option if you have connected a Polycom Vortex mixer. Note: This setting only affects audio input 1. Typically, you should enable this setting only if a microphone is connected to audio input 1. Microphones connected to the Polycom microphone input are automatically echo cancelled.</p>
<p>Content Input Level Polycom HDX 9006 Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 8000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 Polycom HDX 6000 HD Polycom HDX 4000 HD Polycom HDX 4000</p>	<p>Specifies the volume level for audio input 4 of a Polycom HDX 9000 series or Polycom HDX 8000 series system. Specifies the volume level for audio input 3 of a Polycom HDX 7000 series system. Specifies the volume level for the PC audio input of a Polycom HDX 6000 series or Polycom HDX 4000 series.</p>
<p>Enable Phantom Power Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 9001</p>	<p>Allows the system to supply power to microphones connected directly to the audio input. Note: This selection is only available when you set Input Type to Microphone.</p>

Setting	Description
Input Type (dB meter)	Lets you see the peak input signal level present at audio input 1.
Built-In Microphones (dB meter) Polycom HDX 4000 HD Polycom HDX 4000	Lets you see the peak input signal level present at the built-in microphones.
Content Input (dB meter) Polycom HDX 9006 Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 8000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 Polycom HDX 6000 HD Polycom HDX 4000 HD Polycom HDX 4000	Lets you see the peak input signal level present at the content audio input.

3 Select  and enter these settings on the Audio Output screen:

Setting	Description
Line Output Mode	Specifies whether volume for a device connected to the audio line out connectors is variable or fixed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Variable—Allows users to set the volume with the remote control. • Fixed—Sets the volume to the Audio Level specified in the system interface. <p>Note: When this setting is set to Fixed, the remote control's volume adjustment does not affect the output level of audio output 1.</p>
Level Polycom HDX 9006 Polycom HDX 9004 Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 9001 Polycom HDX 8000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 HD Polycom HDX 7000 Polycom HDX 6000 HD	Sets the volume level for audio output 1 when Line Output Mode is set to Fixed .
Line Out (dB meter)	Lets you see the peak output signal level present at audio output 1.

- 4 Select  and enter these settings on the VCR/DVD screen for a Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, or Polycom HDX 7000 series system:

Setting	Description
Line In Level	Sets the volume level for audio input 3. The default setting of Auto configures the system for automatic gain control.
Line Out Level	Sets the volume level for audio output 3.
VCR/DVD Audio Out Always On	Allows you to record a call using one VCR or DVD, while playing content into the call from a second VCR or DVD. Do not select this setting if you have only one VCR or DVD player connected. If this setting is disabled, the VCR audio output is disabled when VCR is the selected camera source.
Line In Level (dB meter)	Lets you see the peak input signal level present at audio input 3.
Line Out Level (dB meter)	Lets you see the peak output signal level present at audio output 3.

- 5 Select  and enter these settings on the Audio Levels screen:

Setting	Description
Master Audio Volume	Sets the volume level for audio from the far site.
Bass	Sets the volume level for the low frequencies without changing the master audio volume.
Treble	Sets the volume level for the high frequencies without changing the master audio volume.

StereoSurround Settings

To send or receive stereo audio, make sure your Polycom HDX system equipment is set up as described in [Connecting Devices to the Polycom HDX Microphone Input](#) on page 4-3 and [Connecting Audio Output](#) on page 4-10. Then configure the system to use Polycom StereoSurround, test the system configuration, and place a test call.

If you are in a call with a far site that is sending audio in stereo mode, you can receive in stereo. In multipoint calls where some sites can send and receive stereo and some sites cannot, any site that is set up to send or receive stereo will be able to do so.



Some audio settings are unavailable when a SoundStructure digital mixer is connected to the Polycom HDX system. For more information, refer to [Connecting Non-Polycom Microphones or a Mixer to a Polycom HDX System](#) on page 4-9.

To configure stereo settings:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Audio > Stereo Settings**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the Stereo Settings screen:

Setting	Description
Enable Polycom StereoSurround	Specifies that Polycom StereoSurround is used for all calls. To send or receive stereo audio, make sure your Polycom HDX system is set up as described in Connecting Devices to the Polycom HDX Microphone Input on page 4-3 and Connecting Audio Output on page 4-10.
Polycom Microphone Type (dB meter)	Lets you see the peak input signal level for Polycom microphones.
Stereo	Positions the audio input within the left and right channels. Left sends all of the audio to the left channel. Right sends all of the audio to the right channel. For Polycom HDX digital microphones and ceiling microphones, Left+Right sends audio from one microphone element to the left channel and audio from a second element to the right channel.
Autorotation	Specifies whether autorotation is used for Polycom HDX microphones. If this feature is enabled, the system automatically assigns left and right channels for the microphone based on sound it senses from the left and right speakers. Note: This feature does not work when headphones are used.

Audio Meters

The audio meters in the user interface allow you to identify left and right channels. The meters also indicate peak signal levels. Set signal levels so that you see peaks between +3 dB and +7 dB with normal speech and program material. Occasional peaks of +12 dB to +16 dB with loud transient noises are acceptable. If you see +20 on the audio meter, the audio signal is 0 dBFS and the audio might be distorted.

Testing StereoSurround

After you configure the system to use Polycom StereoSurround, test the system configuration and place a test call.

To test your stereo configuration:

- 1 Make sure the microphones are positioned correctly.

Refer to [Placing Polycom Microphones to Send Stereo from Your Site](#) on page 4-8.

- 2 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Audio > Stereo Settings**.

Gently blow on the left leg and right leg of each Polycom microphone while watching the Left and Right meters to identify the left and right inputs.


- 3 Select .

Test the speakers to check volume and verify that audio cables are connected. If the system is in a call, the far site hears the tone.

Exchange the right and left speakers if they are reversed.

Adjust the volume control on your external audio amplifier so that the test tone sounds as loud as a person speaking in the room. If you are using a Sound Pressure Level (SPL) meter, it should measure about 80-90 dBA in the middle of the room.

To make a test call in stereo:

- >> Select **Polycom Austin Stereo** from the directory Sample Sites group, or enter `stereo.polycom.com` in the dialing field and press  **Call** on the remote control or keypad.

The Polycom Austin Stereo site demonstrates the stereo feature with an entertaining and informative presentation.

Polycom HDX System Settings for a Polycom Vortex Mixer

To configure a Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, or Polycom HDX 7000 series system to use a Polycom Vortex mixer:

- 1 (Polycom HDX 9000 series) Go to **System > Admin Settings > Audio > Inputs/Outputs**.
 - Set **Input type** to **Line Input**.
 - Disable **Echo Canceller**.
- 2 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Serial Ports**. Set **RS-232 Mode** to **Vortex Mixer** for the appropriate port.

Refer to the Polycom Vortex documentation for details on configuring the mixer.

Settings for Non-Polycom Microphones

To configure a Polycom HDX 9004, Polycom HDX 9002, or Polycom HDX 9001 system to use devices connected directly to audio input 1:

>> Go to **System > Admin Settings > Audio > Inputs/Outputs**.

- a** Set **Input Type** to **Microphone**.
- b** Enable **Echo Canceller**.
- c** (Polycom HDX 9000 series) Enable **Phantom Power** if the microphone is not amplified.
- d** Adjust the audio **Input Type Level** if necessary.
- e** Speak into the microphones that are connected to the audio line inputs. The audio meter should peak at about 5 dB for normal speech.

Content and Closed Captions

You can present content during calls when you use sources such as the following:

- A VCR or DVD player connected directly to a Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, or Polycom HDX 7000 series system
- People+Content IP installed on a computer, with any Polycom HDX system
- A computer connected directly to a Polycom HDX system

For more information about sharing content during a call, refer to the *User's Guide for Polycom HDX Systems*.

Connecting VCR/DVDs

You can connect a VCR or DVD player to a Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, or Polycom HDX 7000 series system to play videotapes or DVDs into calls. Or you can connect a VCR or DVD player to record your video conference. You can also connect two VCRs or DVD players, to play material and record the call at the same time.



Configuring VCR/DVD Player Settings

You can connect a VCR or DVD player to Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, or Polycom HDX 7000 series systems.

Playing a Videotape or DVD

The VCR/DVD inputs are active when you select the camera source configured as VCR. The microphone inputs remain active while the VCR or DVD player is playing. Call participants may wish to mute the microphones while playing videotapes or DVDs.



To configure VCR/DVD audio settings for playing a videotape or DVD:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Audio > Inputs/Outputs** >  > .
- 2 Set **Line In Level** for playback volume of the VCR/DVD player relative to other audio from the system.
- 3 Enable **VCR/DVD Audio Out Always On** unless you have the VCR/DVD inputs and outputs both connected to the same device to play and record.

Recording a Call to Videotape or DVD

All audio from the near site and far site is recorded, along with the VCR/DVD Record Source video as configured on the Monitors screens. VCR and DVD video output is standard-definition format. Polycom HDX systems scale other formats to standard definition.

To configure VCR/DVD video settings for recording a call:



- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Monitors > Monitors** >  > .
- 2 Set the aspect ratio and video format for recording.
- 3 Select one or more sources for the **VCR/DVD Record Source**.

If you select both near and far, the Polycom HDX system automatically switches recording to the site that is talking. If you select content as a record source, it is recorded (when available) regardless of who is talking. For more information about configuring VCR/DVD settings for recording a call, refer to the Monitor 3 settings described on page 3-7.



Polycom HDX systems record video in standard definition (SD) format only.

To configure VCR/DVD audio settings for recording a call:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Audio > Stereo Settings**.
Clear **Enable Polycom StereoSurround**.
 - 2 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Audio > Inputs/Outputs** >  > .
- Adjust the **Line Out Level** for playback volume, if necessary.
- Enable **VCR/DVD Audio Out Always On** unless you have the VCR/DVD inputs and outputs both connected to the same device to play and record.

Connecting Computers to Polycom HDX Systems

You can connect a computer directly to a Polycom HDX system. When you do this, other call participants can see everything that you see on your computer.

When you connect to video and audio from your computer, the audio is muted unless the computer is selected as a video source.

For more information about connecting computers as content video sources for Polycom HDX systems, refer to [Connecting Cameras](#) on page 3-13. Refer to your system's setup sheet for connection details.

Configuring Content Sharing

To configure the content display:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Monitors > Monitors**, and select **Display Content** for the monitor that will display content. (not available on the Polycom HDX 6000 series)
- 2 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > Call Preference**.
- 3 Enable **H.239**.
- 4 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Audio > Inputs/Outputs**. Set the **Content Input Level**. (not available on the Polycom HDX 9002 or Polycom HDX 9001)

Configuring Content Display with People+Content IP

People+Content IP enables a presenter to show content from a computer to other sites in a video conference using only an IP network connection. The presenter can show PowerPoint® slides, video clips, spreadsheets, or any other type of content from a computer. People+Content IP supports any computer desktop resolution with color set to 16-bit or higher.

Before a presenter can use a computer to show content with People+Content IP, you need to:

- Download the People+Content IP software application from the Polycom web site to the computer(s) that the presenter will use to show content.

You don't need to change the computer resolutions and you don't need special cables or hardware, but the computer(s) must meet these requirements:

- Operating System: Windows 2000, Windows XP Home, or Windows XP Professional
 - Minimum computer: 500 MHz Pentium® III (or equivalent); 256 MB memory
Recommended computer: 1 GHz Pentium III (or equivalent); 512 MB memory
- Connect the computer(s) to the IP network.

To install People+Content IP on a computer:

- 1 On a computer with Windows XP or Windows 2000, open a web browser and go to the Polycom web site at www.polycom.com/support.
- 2 Navigate to your product page.
- 3 Download and install the People+Content IP software.

Configuring People on Content™

Polycom People on Content allows you to show yourself on top of content that you are sharing. The effect is similar to a weather report on television.

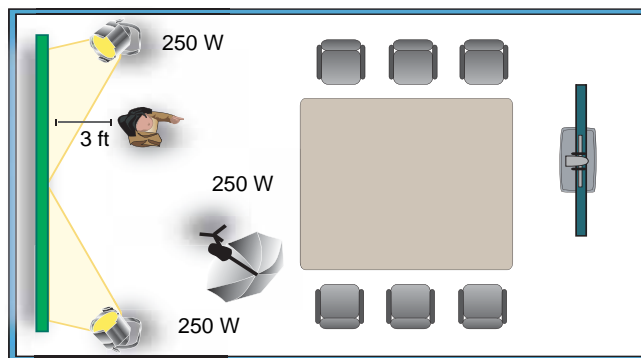


This feature is available for Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, and Polycom HDX 4000 series systems. For more information about using this feature, refer to the *User's Guide for Polycom HDX Systems*.

Setting Up the Room for People on Content

For the best results, follow these guidelines for People on Content:

- Polycom recommends using the Polycom EagleEye HD or Polycom EagleEye 1080 camera when setting up Polycom HDX 9000 series and Polycom HDX 8000 series systems to use People on Content. If you are using a Polycom EagleEye 1080 or Polycom EagleEye View camera, activating People on Content automatically reduces the resolution to 720p.
- Create a flat, consistent background color using a screen or matte-finish paint in green or blue. Make sure that the background does not have shadows or glare.
- Make sure that the background and the presenter are well lit. For example, use a minimum of two 250 W halogen lights on the background and one on the presenter.
- Experiment with different room arrangements, lighting, and backgrounds.




Enabling and Calibrating People on Content on the System

Before using People on Content, configure and calibrate the system so that presenters can use People on Content during calls.

To configure and calibrate the system for People on Content:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Cameras > People on Content**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the People on Content screen:

Setting	Description
Foreground Source	Specifies Camera 1 as the video source to display on top of the background content.
Background Content Source	Specifies the content video source to use for the background image when using People on Content. Only cameras configured as Content are available as a Background Content Source. People+Content IP cannot be used as a background content source.

- 3 Select  **Next** to go to the People on Content calibration screen. Follow the instructions on the screen to calibrate the camera for People on Content. Calibration does the following:
 - A camera preset is created for the green screen area.
 - The camera calibrates to the background color.

Configuring Closed Captioning

You can provide real-time text transcriptions or language translations of the video conference by displaying closed captions on your system. When you provide captions for a conference, the captioner may be present, or may use a telephone or web browser to listen to the conference audio. When the captioner sends a unit of text, all sites see it on the main monitor for 15 seconds. The text then disappears automatically.

Closed captions are supported between Polycom HDX systems with any software version and Polycom VSX® systems with software version 7.0 or later.

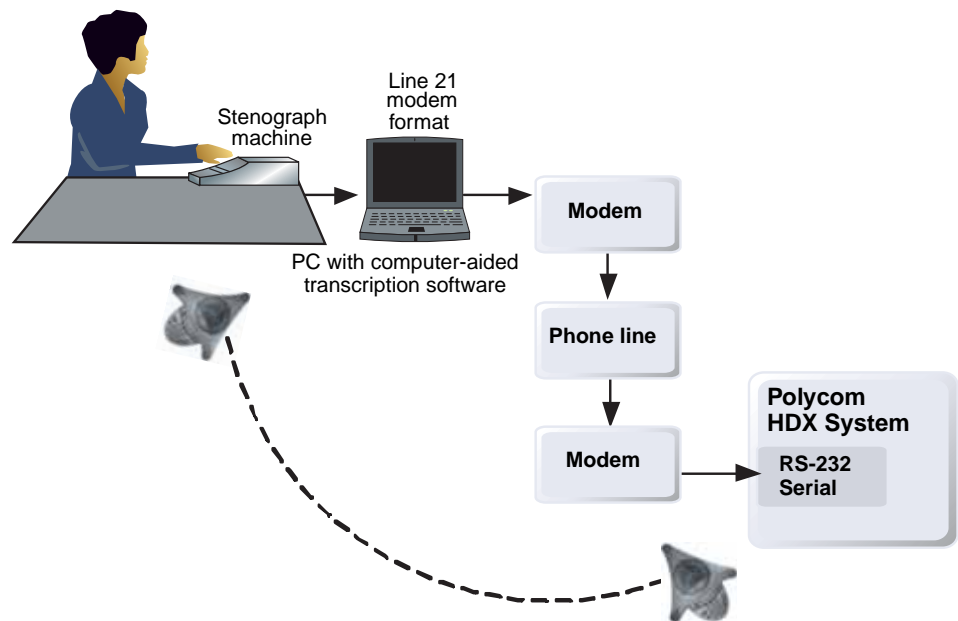
Captions may be provided in any language that uses the Latin alphabet.

Depending on the capabilities of the system, the captioner may enter caption text using one of the following methods:

- Remotely, via a dial-up connection to the system's serial RS-232 port
- In the room using equipment connected directly to the serial port
- In the room or remotely, using the Polycom HDX web interface

Via a Dial-Up Connection to the Systems' RS-232 Serial Port

Closed captioners can provide captions from inside the conference room, or from a remote location, via a dial-up connection to the serial port of the Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, or Polycom HDX 7000 series system, as shown in the following diagram.



To supply closed captions via a dial-up connection:

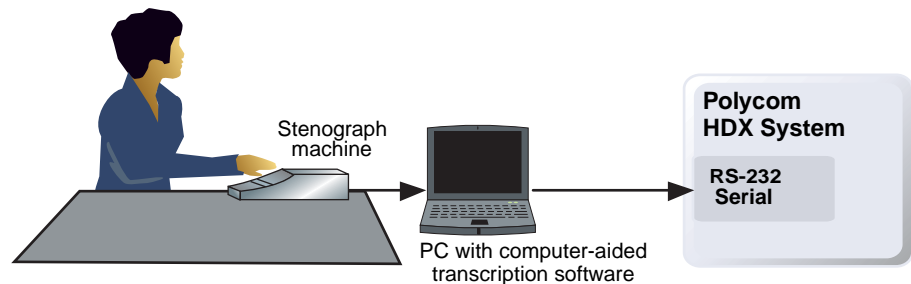
- 1 Ensure that the computer and the Polycom HDX system are configured to use the same baud rate and parity settings.
- 2 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Serial Ports** and set the RS-232 Mode to **Closed Caption**.
- 3 Establish a dial-up connection between the computer and the Polycom HDX system.
 - a Connect a null modem adapter to the RS-232 serial port.
 - b Connect an RS-232 cable to the modem and to the null modem adapter.
 - c Connect the modem to a phone line.
 - d Configure the modem for 8 bits, no parity.

You may need to configure the modem to answer automatically. You may also need to configure it to ignore DTR signals.
- 4 On the computer, start the transcription application.
- 5 Enter text using the stenographic machine connected to the computer.

- 6 To stop sending closed captions, close the transcription application.

Via the System's Serial RS-232 Port

Closed captioners can provide captions from inside the conference room, using equipment connected directly to the serial port of the Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, or Polycom HDX 7000 series system, as shown in the following diagram.

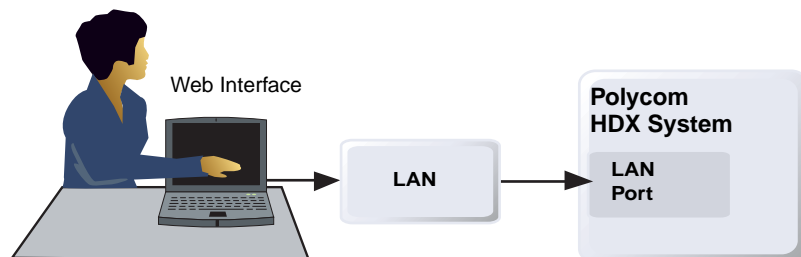


To supply closed captions using equipment connected directly to the serial port:

- 1 Ensure that the computer and the Polycom HDX system are configured to use the same baud rate and parity settings.
- 2 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Serial Ports** and set the RS-232 mode to **Closed Caption**.
- 3 On the computer, start the transcription application.
- 4 Enter text using the stenographic machine connected to the computer.
- 5 To stop sending closed captions, close the transcription application.

Via the Polycom HDX Web Interface

Closed captioners can provide captions from inside the conference room, or from a remote location, by entering the captions directly into the Polycom HDX web interface, as shown in the following diagram.



To supply closed captions for a conference using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1** On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2** In the browser address line, enter the IP address of the system, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the system's web interface.
- 3** Go to **Utilities > Closed Caption**.
- 4** Log in using this information if prompted:
User Name: Your name.
Password: Meeting password defined for your video conferencing system.
- 5** In the Closed Caption screen, type the caption text into the text field. Text wraps to the next line after 32 characters.
- 6** Press **Send** to send the text to the sites in the conference.

Calling and Answering

Configuring Call Settings

The Call Settings screens provide access to high-level options for the entire system. For convenience, some of the User Settings options are repeated on these screens.

To configure call settings:

- 1** Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > System Settings > Call Settings**.
- 2** Configure these settings on the Call Settings screen:

Setting	Description
<p>Maximum Time in Call</p>	<p>Enter the maximum number of minutes allowed for call length.</p> <p>When that time has expired, you see a message asking you if you want to hang up or stay in the call. If you do not answer within one minute, the call automatically disconnects. If you choose to stay in the call at this time, you will not be prompted again.</p> <p>Choosing 0 removes any limit.</p> <p>This setting also applies when you are viewing the Near video screen or showing content, even if you are not in a call. If the maximum time is reached while viewing Near video, the system automatically returns to the Home screen. If content is being shown, the content stops.</p>
<p>Display Time in Call</p>	<p>Specifies whether to display the elapsed time or the local time during a call. You can also choose not to display the time.</p>
<p>Call Detail Report</p>	<p>Specifies whether to collect call data for the Call Detail Report and Recent Calls list. When selected, information about calls can be viewed through the Polycom HDX web interface and downloaded as a .csv file.</p> <p>Note: If this setting is disabled, applications such as the Polycom Global Management System will no longer retrieve new Call Detail Report (CDR) records.</p>
<p>Recent Calls</p>	<p>Specifies whether to display the Recent Calls button on the home screen. The Recent Calls screen lists the site number or name, the date and time, and whether the call was incoming or outgoing.</p> <p>Note: If the Call Detail Report option is not selected, the Recent Calls option is not available.</p>
<p>Allow Mixed IP and ISDN Calls</p>	<p>Specifies whether users can make multipoint calls that include both IP and H.320 sites. This selection is only available when the system has ISDN networking capability.</p>
<p>Far Site Name Display Time</p>	<p>Turns the far site name display on or off, or specifies the time period the far site name appears on screen when calls first connect.</p>
<p>Auto Answer Point-to-Point Video</p>	<p>Specifies whether to answer incoming point-to-point calls automatically.</p>
<p>Auto Answer Multipoint Video</p>	<p>Specifies whether to answer incoming multipoint calls automatically. This selection is only available when the system has multipoint capability.</p>

Setting the Call Answering Mode

To set the call answering mode:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > System Settings > Call Settings**.
- 2 Select **Auto Answer Point-to-Point Video** to set the answer mode for calls with one site, or select **Auto Answer Multipoint Video** to set the mode for calls with two or more other sites.
- 3 Select one of the following:
 - **Yes** – Answers calls automatically.
 - **No** – Enables you to answer calls manually.
 - **Do Not Disturb** – Refuses incoming calls automatically. The caller receives a message that the call is rejected.

Configuring Multipoint Calling

You can use your Polycom HDX system to participate in multipoint conferences. Multipoint conferences include multiple video sites and can also include analog phone, Voice Over ISDN, H.323 audio-only, or SIP audio-only sites. The first analog phone or Voice Over ISDN connection does not count toward the number of sites in a call. Additional analog phone or Voice Over ISDN connections, as well as all H.323 audio-only and SIP audio-only connections, do count toward the number of sites in a call. Multipoint calls require a multipoint conferencing unit (MCU) or a hosting system. Depending on the system's configuration, Polycom HDX systems can host multipoint calls. Polycom HDX systems may also be able to use the Conference on Demand feature for multipoint calling.

Depending on your Polycom HDX system model, you may need to enter a multipoint option key to enable multipoint calling.

Polycom HDX 9001, Polycom HDX 7000, Polycom HDX 6000 series, and Polycom HDX 4000 systems can participate in SD multipoint calls, but they cannot host HD or SD multipoint calls.

For more information about multipoint calls, refer to [Configuring Multipoint Viewing Modes](#) on page 3-10 and [HD and SD Multipoint Calls](#) on page 3-27.

Entering a Multipoint Option Key

Before placing multipoint calls, you may need to enter a multipoint option key. A five-minute multipoint trial is available.

For information about purchasing a multipoint call option, please contact your Polycom distributor.

To enter the multipoint option key:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Options**.
- 2 Enter the multipoint (MP) option key.

To enable or disable multipoint trial mode:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Options**.
- 2 Select **Enable Multipoint Trial** to allow five-minute multipoint calling without the multipoint option key.

Configuring the Conference on Demand Feature

If your organization uses Polycom's PathNavigator, *ReadiManager* SE200, or Polycom CMA system, you may be able to use the Conference on Demand feature to place multipoint calls with up to 10 sites, including the site that places the call.

In order to place calls using Conference on Demand, you need to:

- Register your Polycom HDX system with PathNavigator, *ReadiManager* SE200, or Polycom CMA system
- Configure your Polycom HDX system to use Conference on Demand for multipoint calls (see [Configuring the System to Use a Gatekeeper](#) on page 2-7)
- Create a group in the directory that can be used to place the multipoint call

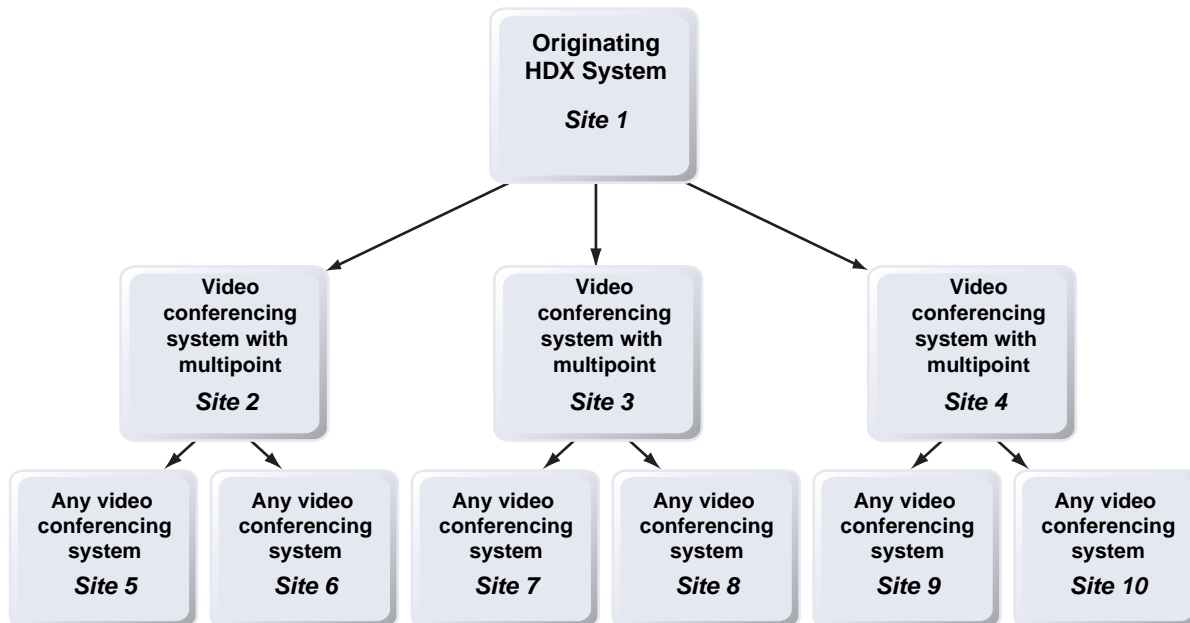


Points to note about Conference on Demand:

- Once the call begins, users cannot add another site to the call, even if the site was in the call originally and is attempting to rejoin. Because of this, you cannot place cascaded multipoint calls through Conference on Demand.
- The Polycom MGC or RMX system must have enough ports available to complete the call. The system displays a message if the bridge does not have enough ports (resources) available to connect all the sites.

Including Multiple Sites in a Cascaded Call

You can include multiple sites in a cascaded call if the sites you call have internal multipoint capability. The following diagram shows how to do this.



To place a cascaded call:

- 1 Create and call a group in the directory, or place calls one at a time to several other sites.
- 2 Ask each far site to call additional sites. Along with these additional sites, each far site in the original multipoint call can add one audio-only connection.




Points to note about cascaded calls:

- You cannot place cascaded multipoint calls using Conference on Demand.
- Chair control, People+Content, and H.239 are not supported in cascaded calls.
- Cascaded multipoint is not supported in SIP calls.
- HD/SD multipoint is not supported when the Polycom HDX system is hosting a cascaded call.
- Only Full Screen multipoint mode is available in cascaded calls.
- The encryption padlock icon might not accurately indicate whether a cascaded call is encrypted.

Configuring Directory Settings

To configure system settings:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > System Settings > Directory**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the Directory screen:

Setting	Description
System Name	Enter or change the system name in this field. This name appears on the screen for the far site when you are making calls.
Localized System Name	Displays the localized system name, if you have entered one. You can enter a Localized System Name for Simplified Chinese on this screen using the Chinese Virtual Keyboard. You must use the Polycom HDX web interface to enter localized system names for other languages.
Preview Directory Entry Information	Specifies whether to display a preview of each entry on the Directory screen.
Allow Directory Changes	Specifies whether users can save changes to the directory or Favorites list.
Confirm Directory Deletions	Specifies whether users are prompted to confirm deletions of directory entries.
Confirm Directory Additions Upon Call Disconnect	Specifies whether users are prompted to add a new directory entry for the last site called, if the call lasted at least 1 minute.
Search	Specifies the method for directory searches. If set to Auto, searches start as soon as you enter a character in the search field, and no Search button is displayed. If set to Manual, searches start when you select the  Search button.

Creating a Localized System Name with the Polycom HDX Web Interface

Polycom HDX systems send the localized system name to the far site as the caller ID. The localized system name is displayed if the user interface of the far-site system is set to that same language. If the far-site system and localized system name are in different languages, the far-site system displays the English system name. The English name is the name used by the Global Directory Server, the gatekeeper, and other systems that do not support localized system names, and it is also the name that shows up in the Recent Calls list.

To create a localized system name using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Go to **Admin Settings > General Settings > System Settings**.
- 4 Enter the localized system name in the appropriate language field.
- 5 Click **Update**.

Managing Directories with the Polycom HDX Web Interface

The Polycom HDX Web Interface import/export directory feature allows you to maintain consistency of Polycom HDX system directories in your organization efficiently. It is particularly useful for administrators managing multiple systems that call the same locations. You can:

- Transfer existing directory entries between Polycom HDX systems
- Develop directory entries on one system, save them to your computer, and then distribute them to other systems
- Create localized directory entries

Only local directories can be downloaded. Local directory entries are saved to a PC in .xml format only in version 2.6. Version 2.6 or later can import .csv files saved in a previous HDX version or .xml files saved in version 2.6 or later. However, you cannot import .xml files into an older HDX version.

To download a Polycom HDX system directory to your computer using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Go to **Utilities > Import/Export Directory**.
- 4 Click **HDX —> PC** to download the .xml file from the Polycom HDX system.
- 5 Save the file to a location on your computer.

To upload Polycom HDX system directory entries using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Go to **Utilities > Import/Export Directory**.

- 4 Click **PC** → **HDX**.
- 5 Click **Browse** and browse to the location of the .csv or .xml file on your computer.
- 6 Click **Import Directory** to upload the file to the Polycom HDX system.

To create a localized directory entry using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Go to **Place a Call > Directory**.
- 4 Select an entry.
- 5 Edit the entry to enter a localized directory entry name in the **Localized Name** field, and specify the language for the localized directory entry.

Configuring the Global Directory

The global directory provides a list of other systems that are registered with the Global Directory Server and available for calls. The other systems appear in the directory, allowing users to place calls to other users by selecting their names.



When making a connection from a web browser to configure the HDX system, always enter the address of the HDX system in one of the following formats:
`https://hostname` or `https://10.11.12.13`.

Using the HTTPS protocol ensures that the configuration of all login credentials (such as user names and passwords) are transmitted using an encrypted channel. This includes those credentials used to communicate with third-party systems on your network. Using the HTTPS protocol severely limits the ability of anyone on the network to discover these credentials.

You can configure the system to use one of the following directory servers in standard operating mode.

Directory Servers Supported	Authentication Protocols	Global Directory Groups	Entry Calling Information
Polycom GDS	Proprietary	Not Supported	May include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • H.323 IP address (raw IP address, DNS name, or H.323 extension) • ISDN number
LDAP with H.350 or Active Directory	Any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • NTLM • Basic • Anonymous 	Not Supported	May include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • H.323 IP address (raw IP address, DNS name, H.323 dialed digits, H.323 ID, or H.323 extension) • SIP address (SIP URI) • ISDN number • Phone number*
Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007	NTLM	Contact groups but not distribution lists	May include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SIP address (SIP URI)
* To successfully call a phone number from the LDAP directory, the phone number must be stored in one of the following formats: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • +Country Code.Area Code.Number • +Country Code.(National Direct Dial Prefix).Area Code.Number 			

You can configure the system to use the following directory server when the system is automatically provisioned by a Polycom CMA system.

Directory Servers Supported	Authentication Protocol	Global Directory Groups	Entry Calling Information
LDAP by a Polycom CMA system	NTLM only	Pre-defined groups from the LDAP directory are shown in Polycom HDX system's directory	May include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • H.323 dialed digits, H.323 ID, or H.323 extension • Phone number*
Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007	NTLM	Contact groups but not distribution lists	May include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SIP address (SIP URI)
* To successfully call a phone number from the LDAP directory, the phone number must be stored in one of the following formats: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • +Country Code.Area Code.Number • +Country Code.(National Direct Dial Prefix).Area Code.Number 			

To choose a directory server:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Global Services > Directory Servers**.
- 2 Enable **LDAP, Polycom GDS, or Microsoft Office Communications Server**.
- 3 Select **Edit** to edit the connection information for the desired server.

To configure the Polycom GDS settings:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Global Services > Directory Servers > Edit**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the Global Directory Servers screen:

Setting	Description
Global Directory (GDS)	Specifies the IP address or DNS address of the Global Directory Server. You can enter up to five addresses.
Password	Lets you enter the global directory password, if there is one.
Register	Registers this system with the Global Directory Server.
Display Global Addresses	Displays other registered systems in the global directory.
Display Name in Global Directory	Specifies whether to display the system's name in the global directories of other registered systems.
Save Global Directory to System	When enabled, this setting allows Polycom HDX systems to display global entries in the directory in case the system loses connection with the Polycom GDS Directory.
Group Name	Specifies the group name used for Polycom GDS directory entries in the local directory. The default name for the Polycom GDS group is Global Directory .

To configure the LDAP settings:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Global Services > Directory Servers > Edit**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the LDAP screen.

LDAP Setting	Description
Server Address	Specifies the address of the LDAP directory server. With Automatic Provisioning, this setting is configured by the server and appears as read-only.
Server Port	Specifies the port used to connect to the LDAP server. With Automatic Provisioning, this setting is configured by the server and appears as read-only.
Group Name	Specifies the group name used for LDAP directory entries in the local directory. The default name for the LDAP group is Global Directory .
Base DN (Distinguished Name)	Specifies the top level of the LDAP directory where searches will initiate. With Automatic Provisioning, this setting is configured by the server and appears as read-only.
Authentication Type	Specifies the protocol used for authentication with the LDAP server: NTLM, BASIC, or Anonymous.
Use SSL (Secure Socket Layer)	Enables SSL for securing data flow to and from the LDAP server.
Domain Name	Specifies the domain name for authentication with the LDAP server.
User Name	Specifies the user name for authentication with LDAP server.
Password	Specifies the password for authentication with the LDAP server.

To configure the Microsoft Office Communications Server directory settings:

- 1 Go to **Admin Settings > Network > IP > SIP Settings** and configure the SIP settings as described in [Configuring SIP Settings for Integration with Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007](#) on page 2-13.

Connect to the Office Communications Server on the **Go to System > Admin Settings > Global Services > Directory Servers > Edit**.

- 2 Configure these settings on the Microsoft Office Communications Server screen.

Setting	Description
Registration Status	Specifies whether the system is successfully registered with the Microsoft Office Communications Server.
Domain User Name	Specifies the Domain User Name entered on the SIP Settings screen.
User Name	Specifies the User Name entered on the SIP Settings screen.
Display Contacts	Specifies whether to display Microsoft Office Communications Server contacts on the Favorites screen and in the directory.
Show My Offline Contacts	Specifies whether to include offline Microsoft Office Communications Server contacts on the Favorites screen and in the directory.
Group Name	Specifies the group name used for Microsoft Office Communications Server entries in the directory. The default name for the group is Global Directory .

Directory Groups

Having groups in the directory can help users find calling information quickly and easily. Polycom HDX systems support global groups and local groups.

Polycom HDX systems support up to 1,000 local contacts that users create within Favorites. It can also support one of the following:

- Up to 200 additional contacts with presence, which appear in Favorites, when registered with Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007.
- Up to 200 additional contacts with presence, which appear in Favorites, when registered with Polycom CMA.
- Up to 4,000 contacts from up to 5 servers, which appear in the Global Directory group, when registered with to Polycom GDS server.

Polycom HDX systems support up to 200 local groups that users create within Favorites. If the system is connected to a global directory server, it can also support one of the following:

- Up to 64 additional groups from the Microsoft Office Communications Server, which appear in the Favorites group.
- Up to 200 additional distribution groups from Polycom CMA, which appear in the Global Directory group.

Global Directory Groups

Global directory entries are assigned to a global group with the name that you specify in the Directory Server configuration. Up to 200 search results can be displayed at a time from an LDAP or Microsoft global directory. Users cannot edit or delete global directory entries or global directory groups.

Local Directory Groups

The Favorites group is a local directory group that contains the types of Contacts shown in the following table. Local directory entries are also displayed on the Favorites screen.

Directory Server Registration	Types of Contacts	Presence State Displayed
Polycom GDS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Directory entries created locally by the user 	Unknown
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • References to Polycom GDS entries added to Favorites by the user. These entries are only available if the system is successfully registered with Polycom GDS. These entries can be deleted from Favorites by the user. These entries can be copied to other local groups and removed from those groups by the user. These entries cannot be edited by the user. 	Online/Offline
LDAP with H.350 or Active Directory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Directory entries created locally by the user • References to LDAP directory entries added to Favorites by the user. These entries are only available if the system can successfully access the LDAP/Active Directory server. These entries can be deleted from Favorites by the user. These entries can be copied to other local groups and removed from those groups by the user. These entries cannot be edited by the user. 	Unknown

Directory Server Registration	Types of Contacts	Presence State Displayed
LDAP by a Polycom CMA System	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Directory entries created locally by the user • References to LDAP directory entries added to Favorites by the user. <p>These entries are only available if the system can successfully access Polycom CMA.</p> <p>These entries can be deleted from Favorites by the user.</p> <p>These entries can be copied to other local groups and removed from those groups by the user.</p> <p>These entries cannot be edited by the user</p>	Unknown
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LDAP directory entries saved as Favorites by the user and stored with the presence service <p>These entries can be deleted from Favorites by the user.</p> <p>These entries can be copied to other local groups and removed from those groups by the user.</p> <p>These entries cannot be edited by the user.</p>	Real-time presence
Microsoft	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Microsoft Office Communications Server directory entries saved as Contacts by the user in Office Communicator and stored on the Microsoft Office Communications Server <p>Users must create their contact lists using Microsoft Office Communicator on a computer.</p> <p>These entries cannot be edited or deleted from Favorites using the Polycom HDX system.</p> <p>These entries can be copied to other local groups and removed from those groups by the user.</p>	Real-time presence

Users can create, edit, and delete local directory entries and local directory groups.

Polycom Conferencing for Microsoft Outlook

Polycom HDX systems can connect to Microsoft Exchange Server 2007 and retrieve calendar information. Connecting to a calendaring service allows the Polycom HDX system to:

- Display the day's scheduled meetings, along with details about each.
- Hide or show details about meetings marked Private, depending on the configuration of the system.
- Display a meeting reminder before each scheduled meeting, along with a reminder tone.

In addition, if the meeting was created using the Polycom Conferencing Add-in for Microsoft Outlook, the Polycom HDX system can:

- Identify video-enabled meetings with an icon displayed on the system calendar.
- Let users join the meeting without knowing the connection details.

To configure Calendaring properties:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Global Services > Calendaring Service**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the Calendaring Service screen:

Setting	Description
Register with Calendaring Service	Enables the system to connect to the Microsoft Exchange Server 2007 and retrieve calendar information.
Microsoft Exchange Server Address	Specifies the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the Microsoft Exchange Client Access Server. If your organization has multiple Client Access Servers behind a network load balancer, then this is the FQDN of the server's Virtual IP Address. If required, an IP address can be used instead of an FQDN, but Polycom recommends using the same FQDN that is used for Outlook clients.
Domain	Specifies the domain for registering to the Microsoft Exchange Server 2007, in either NETBIOS or DNS notation—for example, either company.local or COMPANY.
User Name	Specifies the user name for registering to the Microsoft Exchange Server 2007, with no domain information included. This can be the system's name or an individual's name.
Password	Specifies the system's password for registering with the Microsoft Exchange Server 2007.

Setting	Description
Mailbox (Primary SMTP)	Specifies the Outlook mailbox this system should monitor for calendar information. This should match the Primary SMTP Address for the account in Microsoft Exchange Server 2007, which is displayed as the value of the mail attribute in the account properties.
Reminder Time in Minutes	Specifies the number of minutes before the meeting to display a reminder.
Play Reminder Tone	Specifies whether to play a sound along with the text reminder when the system is not in a call.
Show Private Meeting Information	Specifies whether to display details about meetings marked private.

For information about displaying the Calendar button on the Home screen, refer to [Customizing the Home Screen](#) on page 7-3. For more information about using Polycom Conferencing for Microsoft Outlook, refer to the *User's Guide for Polycom HDX Systems*. For more information about setting up Microsoft Exchange Server 2007 accounts to use the calendaring service, refer to the *Deploying Visual Communications Administration Guide* available on the Polycom website.


System Location, Appearance, and Tones

Configuring Regional Settings

To configure country, language, and long-distance dialing, go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Location**. For more information about each setting, highlight the setting and press **Info** on the remote control.




In order to place ISDN and Analog Phone calls appropriately, leave **Always Dial Area Code** disabled if the country you call does not have area codes. Keep **Always Dial Area Code** enabled if you want to do 10 digit dialing.

- 1 To set the date, time, and location, go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Location**.
- 2 Select  and configure these settings on the Time Zone screen:

Setting	Description
Auto Adjust for Daylight Saving Time	Specifies the daylight savings time setting. When you enable this setting, the system clock automatically changes for daylight saving time.

Setting	Description
Time Zone	Specifies the time difference between GMT (Greenwich Mean Time) and your location.
Time Server	<p>Specifies connection to a time server for automatic system time settings.</p> <p>The date and time must be manually reset every time a Polycom HDX 8000 series or Polycom HDX 7000 series system with Hardware Version A or Polycom HDX 4000 series system restarts, in the following cases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Time Server is set to Off • Time Server is set to Manual or Auto, but the system cannot connect to a time server successfully.
Time Server Address	Specifies the address of the time server to use when Time Server is set to Manual .

3 Select  and configure these settings on the Date and Time screen:

Setting	Description
Date Format and Time Format	Specifies your format preference for the date and time display and lets you enter your local date and time.
Display Time in Call	<p>Specifies the time display in a call:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Elapsed Time – Displays the amount of time in the call. • Local Time – Displays the local time on the screen during a call. • Off – Time is not displayed.

Customizing the Home Screen

The home screen configuration lets you set up the system functionality according to your users' needs, skill levels, and environments. The following configurations show several ways you might want to set up the system.

Infrequent Users (Kiosk Mode)

Provide a simple interface with a few specific items so that no training is needed:

- Provide access to pre-defined speed dial numbers
- Use the marquee to add instructions on screen
- Disable Allow Directory Changes and other Home screen items.



New Users and Conference Rooms

Provide more options but keep it simple:

- Provide access to manual dialing on the Place a Call screen
- Provide access to the directory, Recent Calls, and Favorites



Advanced Users

Provide additional options for advanced video conferencing users:

- Enable the System button for access to system settings, Diagnostics, and System Information
- Access to Calendar to join scheduled meetings
- Access to Favorites to place calls to frequently-called contacts



Use the system's web interface to configure the buttons in the middle of the new Home screen.


To configure the Home screen buttons using the Polycom HDX web interface:


- 1** On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2** In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3** Go to **Admin Settings > Home Screen Settings**.
- 4** Choose up to six of the following buttons to display in the center of the Home screen:
 - **Marquee:** You can configure Button 1 to be marquee text that scrolls across the top of the Home screen. In the field that appears next to the Marquee button selection, enter the text to display.
 - **Favorites:** You can configure any button to be a link to the Favorites list of contacts.
 - **Directory:** You can configure any button to be a link to the Directory screen.
 - **Place a Call:** You can configure any button to be a link to the Place a Call screen for manual dialing.
 - **Recent Calls:** You can configure any button to be a link to the Recent Calls screen.
 - **Calendar:** You can configure any button to be a link to the Calendar screen.
 - **Speed Dial:** You can configure any or all of the buttons to place a call to a specific contact or group. Click the **Select Contact** button that appears next to the Speed Dial selection in the web interface to choose a contact or group from the directory for that button.

Enable the other items that you want to display on the Home screen such as system name, local time and date, System button, and Availability Control.

To design the home screen:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Home Screen Settings**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the Home Screen Settings screen:

Setting	Description
System Name	Specifies whether to display the name of the system on the Home screen. If this setting is disabled, "Home" is displayed.
Local Date and Time	Specifies whether to display the local date and time on the Home screen.
System	Allows users to access the System screen, which includes User Settings, Diagnostics, and System Information. If you remove the System button, you can still access the System screen by navigating to the Home screen, pressing  on the remote, and selecting System .
My SIP, My IP, My Extension, My ISDN	Specifies whether to display the system's IP address, ISDN number, or both on the home screen.
Availability Control	Displays a control on the Home screen that allows users to set the system to Available or Do Not Disturb .

- 3 Select  and configure these settings for the Place a Call Screen:

Setting	Description
Last Number Dialed	Specifies whether to display the last number dialed or clear the dialing field on the home screen.
Call Quality	Allows users to select the bandwidth for calls, as well as the call type, from the Place a Call screen. For information about enabling call types, refer to Configuring Call Preferences on page 2-31.
H.323 Extension (E.164)	Allows users to enter H.323 extensions separately from the gateway ID on the Place a Call screen. If your system is registered with a gatekeeper, this setting also displays your H.323 extension on the home screen. If you do not select this setting, users make gateway calls by entering the call information in this format: gateway ID + ## + extension

Displaying Speed Dial Entries

You can display up to six speed dial entries on the Home screen, depending on whether you have selected other items to display on that screen.



Up to six individual speed dial buttons replace the "Speed Dial" or "Sites" drop-down menu available in previous versions. If you need more than six speed dial entries in version 2.6, consider using Favorites.

To configure speed dial entries using the Polycom HDX web interface:

To configure speed dial entries in version 2.6, use the web interface.

- 1 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Go to **Admin Settings > Home Screen Settings**.
- 4 Select **Speed Dial** for any or all of the buttons.
- 5 Click the **Select Contact** button that appears next to the Speed Dial selection to choose a contact or group from the directory for that button.

Adding Marquee Text

You can create marquee text to display in the dialing entry field on the home screen. You can create context-specific instructions for your users or the marquee text can provide information that helps users choose which site to call.

To enter marquee text using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Enter the Admin ID and remote access password, if a password has been established.
 - Click **Admin Settings > General Settings > Home Screen Settings** and select **Marquee** for Button 1. In the field that appears next to the Marquee selection, type the text to display on the Home screen.

Customizing Camera Names and Icons

Customizing the way cameras appear on screen helps users select the correct camera input during a call. You can enter camera names and assign icons. You can choose camera icons from categories including Corporate, Education, Justice, Manufacturing, and Medical.



To customize camera names and icons:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Cameras**.
- 2 For each camera or video source, enter a name and choose an icon.

Screen Savers

For information about setting the Screen Saver Wait Time, refer to page [3-8](#).

Adding Screen Saver Text

You can customize the Polycom HDX system to display text when the system is in sleep mode. For instance, you can display on-screen instructions to assist users with what steps they should take next.



Output upon Screen Saver Activation on the Monitors screen must be set to **Black** if you want to display screen saver text.

To enter screen saver text using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1** On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2** In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3** Enter the Admin ID and remote access password, if a password has been established.
- 4** Click **Utilities > Screen Saver** and enter:
 - **Screen Saver Text** — Appears as scrolling text when the system is in sleep mode. You can use this scrolling text to provide instructions or next steps for users of the system.
 - **Logo Screen Text** — Appears underneath the logo before the system goes into sleep mode.
- 5** Click **Update**.

Adding a Screen Saver Logo

You can customize the Polycom HDX system to display your own logo instead of the Polycom logo.

To upload a screen saver logo using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1** On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2** In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3** Enter the Admin ID and remote access password, if a password has been established.
- 4** Click **Utilities > Screen Saver**, click **Next**, and follow the onscreen instructions for uploading a logo file.

Security



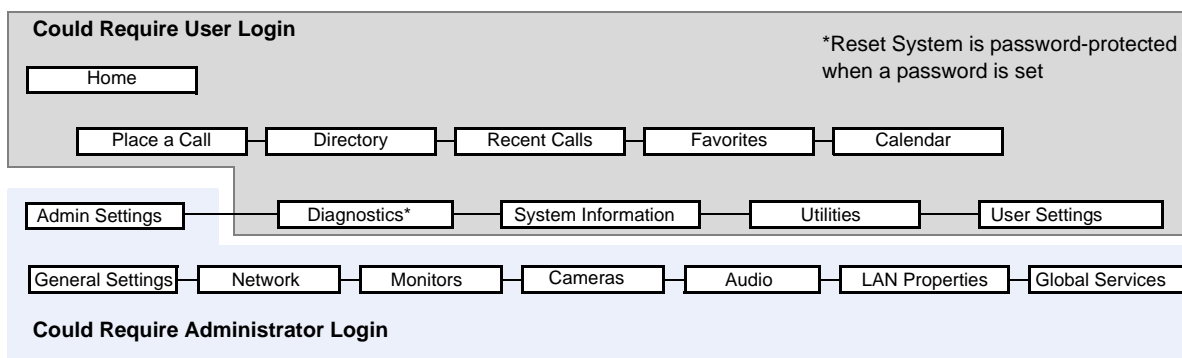
When making a connection from a web browser to configure the HDX system, always enter the address of the HDX system in one of the following formats: `https://hostname` or `https://10.11.12.13`.

Using the HTTPS protocol ensures that the configuration of all login credentials (such as user names and passwords) are transmitted using an encrypted channel. This includes those credentials used to communicate with third-party systems on your network. Using the HTTPS protocol severely limits the ability of anyone on the network to discover these credentials.

Screens that Require a Password for Access

You can configure Polycom HDX systems to provide two levels of access for people who are in the room with the system. You can require a user login to use the system. In addition, you can require an administrator login to configure system Admin Settings.

The following illustration shows which screens could require a user login and which screens could require an administrator login.




You can set an Admin Remote Access Password to restrict who can upgrade the Polycom HDX system software or perform other remote management from a computer.

Configuring Security Options

To set passwords and security options:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Security > Security Settings**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the Security screen:

Setting	Description
Security Mode	Specifies whether the system uses Security Mode, which prevents unsecured access to the system. Every time you enable Security Mode, you must configure a new password for the system.
Security Profile	If set to DoD DSN, the Security Profile sets and controls particular security settings in order to meet DoD DSN requirements. This setting is visible only if the Security Profile was configured in the setup wizard.
Use Room Password for Remote Access	Specifies whether the room password used for local login is also used for the remote login.
Meeting Password	Specifies the password users must supply to join multipoint calls on this system if the call uses the internal multipoint option, rather than a bridge. The meeting password must not contain spaces. Do not set a meeting password if multipoint calls will include audio-only endpoints. Audio-only endpoints cannot participate in password-protected calls.
Admin ID	Specifies the ID for the administrator account. The default Admin ID is "admin".
Admin Room Password	Specifies the password for administrator access when logging in to the system locally. When this password is set, you must enter it to configure the system Admin Settings using the remote control. The password must not contain spaces. The default Admin Room Password is the 14-digit system serial number from the System Information screen or the back of the system.
Admin Remote Access Password	Specifies the password for administrator access when logging in to the system using the web interface or an API session. When this password is set, you must enter it to upgrade the software or manage the system from a computer. The password must not contain spaces.


3 Select  and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Require Login for System Access	Specifies whether the system automatically prompts users to log in when the system comes out of sleep mode. Enabling this setting requires a login to use the system.
User ID	Specifies the ID for the user account.
User Room Password	Specifies the password for user access when logging in to the system locally. When this password is set, you must enter it to access the system using the remote control. The password must not contain spaces.
User Remote Access Password	Specifies the password for user access when logging in to the system remotely. This setting is only available when Security Profile is set to DoD DSN. When this password is set, you must enter it to access the system from a computer. The password must not contain spaces.

4 Select and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Enable Remote Access	<p>Specifies whether to allow remote access to the system by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Web • Telnet • SNMP <p>You may select any of these, or any combination of them.</p> <p>Note: The system restarts if you change the remote access settings. This setting does not deactivate the associated port, only the application. Use Web Access Port to disable the port.</p>
AES Encryption	<p>Specifies how to encrypt calls with other sites that support AES encryption.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off—AES Encryption is disabled. • When Available—AES Encryption is used with any endpoint that supports it, even if the other endpoints in the call don't support it. • Required for Video Calls Only—AES Encryption is used for all video endpoints in the call. Analog phone and voice over ISDN connections are allowed. Video endpoints must support AES Encryption to participate in the call. • Required for All Calls—AES Encryption is used for all video endpoints in the call. Analog phone and voice over ISDN connections are <i>not</i> allowed. All endpoints must support AES Encryption to participate in the call.
Allow Video Display on Web	<p>Specifies whether to allow viewing of the room where the system is located, or video of calls in which the system participates, using the Polycom HDX web interface.</p> <p>Note: This feature activates both near site and far site video displays in Web Director.</p>
Web Access Port (http)	<p>Specifies the port to use when accessing the system using the Polycom HDX web interface.</p> <p>If you change this from the default (port 80), specify a port number of 1025 or higher, and make sure the port is not already in use. You will need to include the port number with the IP address when you use the Polycom HDX web interface to access the system. This makes unauthorized access more difficult.</p> <p>Note: The system restarts if you change the web access port.</p>

Setting	Description
Connect to my LAN	Specifies whether the system is part of the LAN. Changing this setting causes the system to restart.
Allow Access to User Settings	Specifies whether the User Settings screen is accessible to users via the System screen. Select this option if you want to allow users to change limited environmental settings.
NTLM Version	Specifies the authentication protocol for use with Microsoft Office Communications Server, LDAP directory and Polycom Converged Management Application (CMA) server connections. If set to Auto, the system first tries NTLMv2, and if NTLMv2 fails it tries again with NTLMv1.

5 Select  and configure this setting:

Setting	Description
Enable Security Banner	Specifies the security banner to display when the system wakes up or a user logs in. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off — Disables the security banner. Custom — Allows you to enter text to use for the banner. You can enter up to ten lines of text, each of which can contain up to 128 single-byte characters. DoD — Specifies that the system displays a default U.S. Department of Defense security banner.

Configuring Security Mode

You can configure Polycom HDX systems to use Security Mode, which provides secure access to the system. Security Mode utilizes TLS, HTTPS, AES, digital signatures, and other security protocols, algorithms, and mechanisms to put the system into a secure mode. These protocols encrypt management communication over IP, preventing access by unauthorized users.

Every time you enable Security Mode, you must configure new passwords for the Admin, User, and Meeting passwords that are currently configured. The passwords cannot be blank and they cannot be the default value (serial number).

Security Mode requires secure access and a configured Admin password.

When you enable Security Mode, the following settings are set and controlled by the system.

Setting	Restriction
AES Encryption	Set to "Required for Video Calls Only" (or "When Available" after an upgrade), configurable
Enable Remote Access: Telnet	Disabled for port 23 and 24, read-only
Enable Remote Access: SNMP	Disabled, read-only
Web Access Port	Port 80 disabled with no redirect to port 443, read-only Port 443: Available for HTTPS, read-only
Allow Video Display on Web	Disabled, configurable
Auto Answer Settings	Auto Answer Point-to-Point: Disabled, configurable Auto Answer Multipoint Video: Disabled, configurable
User Settings	Auto Answer Multipoint Video: Hidden Mute Auto-Answer Calls: Hidden Allow Video Display on Web: Hidden Far Control of Near Camera: Hidden Allow Video Display on Web: Hidden
Minimum Password Length	Set to 1, must be at least 1 for Admin Room Password and Admin Remote Access Password.

To configure the system to use Security Mode:

- 1** Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Security > Security Settings**.
- 2** Enable **Security Mode**.

When you change this setting, the Polycom HDX system restarts. Every time a Polycom HDX system is powered on or restarts in Security Mode, it verifies that the system software is authentic Polycom software.

Points to note about Security Mode:

- SNMP access is not available in Security Mode.
- Global Management System, *ReadiManager* SE200, and Polycom CMA systems cannot monitor Polycom HDX systems in Security Mode.
- The web interface allows only HTTPS connections using TLS when Security Mode is enabled. Make sure that your web browser has TLS capabilities enabled.

To access a Polycom HDX system in Security Mode using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 Enter the IP address of the system using secure HTTPS access, for example, `https://10.11.12.13`.
- 2 Click **Yes** in the security dialogs that appear. This access uses port 443.
- 3 To access Admin Settings using the Polycom HDX web interface when a Admin Remote Access Password is set, enter the Admin ID as the user name (default is “admin”).

Enabling a Security Profile

You can configure a Security Profile in the setup wizard only. If set to **DoD DSN**, the Security Profile sets and controls particular security settings in order to meet DoD DSN requirements. For a list of pre-defined values and additional restrictions applied by the Security Profile, refer to the *U.S. DoD DSN Deployment Guide* available on the Polycom web site.

To enable a Security Profile:

- >> In the setup wizard, enable **Security Mode** and set **Security Profile** to **DoD DSN**.

The setup wizard is available during initial setup, after a software update or system reset with system settings deleted, or after using the restore button.

To view the Security Profile setting:

- >> Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Security > Security Settings**.



If you do not see the Security Profile setting, it is set to **None** and no settings are controlled by the Security Profile.

Enabling AES Encryption

AES encryption is a standard feature on all Polycom HDX systems. When it is enabled, the system automatically encrypts calls to other systems that have AES encryption enabled.

To enable AES encryption:

- >> Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Security > Security Settings >  > ** and set **AES Encryption**.

If encryption is enabled on the system, a padlock icon appears on the monitor to indicate whether a call is  encrypted or  unencrypted. In a multipoint call, some connections might be encrypted while others are not. The padlock icon might not accurately indicate whether the call is encrypted if the call is cascaded or includes an audio-only endpoint. To avoid security risks, Polycom recommends that all participants communicate the state of their padlock icon verbally at the beginning of a call.

Points to note about AES Encryption:

- AES Encryption is not supported in Basic Mode.
- AES Encryption is not supported on systems registered to an Avaya H.323 gatekeeper.
- For Polycom HDX 8000 series systems, the maximum speed for encrypted SIP calls is 4 Mbps.
- For Polycom HDX 8000 series systems, the maximum speed for encrypted calls with Security Mode enabled is 4 Mbps.

Configuring Encryption Settings for Integration with Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007

Polycom HDX systems use the SRTP standard to support media encryptions in calls with Office Communicator. The encryption settings for each component also affect the ability to place encrypted calls.

Both the Microsoft Office Communications Server pool and the Polycom HDX system need to be configured to support encryption in order for calls to connect with encryption. If both components have encryption turned off, calls connect without encryption. If one component is set to require encryption and the other is not, calls fail to connect.

Calls from a Polycom HDX system to a Polycom RMX system using Microsoft Office Communications Server require that the Polycom HDX system have encryption set to Off or When Available.

For more information about encryption configuration in a Microsoft Office Communications Server environment, refer to the *Deploying Visual Communications Administration Guide*.

Setting Password Policies

You can configure password policies for Admin, User, and Meeting passwords. These password settings can ensure that strong passwords are used.

To configure password policies:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Security > Password Settings** in the local system interface.
- 2 Select **Admin Room Password, User Room Password, Meeting Password, or Remote Access Passwords**.




When **Use Room Password for Remote Access** is enabled, the room password policy is applied to both room and remote access passwords.

Changes to most password policy settings do not take effect until the next time the password is changed. Changes take effect immediately for **Minimum Password Age in Days**, **Maximum Password Age in Days**, and **Password Expiration Warning in Days**. Changing **Minimum Length** from **Off** to some other value also takes effect immediately.

- 1 Configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Minimum Length	Specifies the minimum number of characters required for a valid password.
Can Contain ID or Its Reverse Form	Specifies whether the associated ID or the reverse of the ID can be part of a valid password. If this setting is enabled and the ID is "admin", passwords "admin" and "nimda" are allowed.
Require Lower Case Letters	Specifies whether a valid password must contain one or more lower-case letters.
Require Upper Case Letters	Specifies whether a valid password must contain one or more upper-case letters.
Require Numbers	Specifies whether a valid password must contain one or more numbers.
Require Special Characters	Specifies whether a valid password must contain one or more special characters. Supported characters include: @ - _ ! ; \$, \ / & . # *

2 Select  and configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Do Not Allow Previous Passwords	Specifies the number of most recent passwords that cannot be reused. If set to Off , all previous passwords can be reused.
Minimum Password Age in Days	Specifies the minimum number of days that must pass before the password can change.
Maximum Password Age in Days	Specifies the maximum number of days that can pass before the password must change.
Password Expiration Warning in Days	Specifies how far in advance the system displays a warning that the password will soon expire, if a maximum password age is set.
Minimum Changed Characters	Specifies the number of characters that must be different or change position in a new password. If this is set to 3, "123abc" can change to "345cde" but not to "234bcd".
Maximum Consecutive Repeated Characters	Specifies the maximum number of consecutive repeated characters in a valid password. If this is set to 3, "aaa123" is a valid password but "aaaa123" is not.

Setting the Room and Remote Access Passwords

You can set the Admin Room Password, Admin Remote Access Password, User Room Password, and User Remote Access Password to set various levels of access to the system using the remote control or keypad, or from a computer.

All passwords appear as a series of asterisks as you type them in a configuration or login screen. To enter numbers in a password field, use the remote or keypad number buttons. To enter letters in a password field, press



Keyboard on the remote or keypad.

To use the same password for both local and remote access:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Security > Security Settings**.
- 2 Select **Use Room Password for Remote Access**.

To reset a forgotten password:

If you forget an Admin or User password, you must use the restore button to run the setup wizard again in order to access the Admin Settings and reset the password. For more information, refer to [Using the Restore Button](#) on page 12-2.

After the system restarts, it leads you through the setup wizard. You can enter new passwords when you set up the system.

Setting an Account Lockout

You can configure and enforce an account lockout if someone fails to log in correctly. After a certain number of failed login attempts, the account is locked for an amount of time specified by the administrator.

To configure the account lockout feature:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Security > Account Management**.
- 2 Select **Admin Account** or **User Account**.
- 3 Configure these settings on the Admin Account or User Account screen:

Setting	Description
Lock Account after Failed Logins	Specifies the number of failed login attempts allowed before the system locks the account. If set to Off , the system will not lock the user account due to failed login attempts.
Account Lock Duration in Minutes	Specifies the amount of time that the account remains locked due to failed login attempts.

Managing User Access to Settings and Features

You can manage user access to settings and features by using passwords and by configuring the system to show only those options you want your users to see.

Security Level that You Want	Restrictions to Enforce
High (Kiosk mode)	Require an administrator login to configure system Admin Settings. Allow users to call only the numbers you specify on the home screen. See Customizing the Home Screen on page 7-3.
High (User login mode)	Require an administrator login to configure system Admin Settings. Require a user login to use the system.
Medium	Require an administrator login to configure system Admin Settings. Allow users to place calls using the restrictions you specify for length of call, type of call, and use of the directory.
Low	Require an administrator login to configure system Admin Settings. Enable Allow Access to User Settings so that users can configure some settings.
Very low	Do not require an administrator login to configure system Admin Settings. Allow users to configure all system settings.

You can allow users to change common user preferences by providing access to the User Settings screen.

To allow users to customize the workspace:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Security > Security Settings** >  > .
- 2 Select the **Allow Access to User Settings** option to make the **User Settings** button available to users on the **System** screen.

User Settings contains the following options, which are also available to administrators on the Admin Settings screens:

- Backlight Compensation
- Far Control of Near Camera
- Meeting Password
- Auto Answer Point-to-Point or Multipoint Video
- Mute Auto-Answer Calls
- PIP (not available on the Polycom HDX 4000 series)

- Keypad Audio Confirmation
- Far Site Name Display Time
- Dual Monitor Emulation (not available on the Polycom HDX 4000 series)
- Allow Video Display on Web

Setting up Log Management

You can manage log files from the system's local interface. The log files consist of the following information:

- System logs
- Call Detail Report (CDR)
- Configuration profile

You can transfer the log to an external USB storage device manually, or automatically based on a configurable percent-filled threshold. When the log fills up past the threshold, the following actions are triggered:

- Transfers the log to the USB device if Transfer Frequency is set to "Auto at Threshold"
- Creates a log entry indicating that the threshold has been reached
- Displays an alert on the home screen
- Displays an indicator on the System Status screen

To view the log file status, go to **System > Diagnostics > System Status**. Highlight **Log Threshold** and press  **Info** on the remote or keypad.



When the Log Threshold indicator is yellow or red, automatic log transfers cannot be completed, and data may be lost.

To configure log management:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Security > Log Management**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the Log Management screen:

Setting	Description
Current Percent Filled	Displays how full the log file is, as a percentage of the total size.
Percent Filled Threshold	Specifies a threshold for the percent filled value. Reaching the threshold triggers an alarm, creates a log entry, and transfers the log if Transfer Frequency is set to "Auto at Threshold". "Off" disables logging threshold notifications.
Folder Name	Specifies the name to give the folder for log transfers. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • System Name and Timestamp — Folder name is the system name and the timestamp of the log transfer, in the date and time format specified on the Location screen. For example, if the system name is "Marketing", the folder name could be marketi ng_MMddyymmssSSS. • Timestamp — Folder name is the timestamp of the log transfer, in the date and time format specified on the Location screen, for example yyyyMMddhmmssSSS. • Custom — Optional folder name for manual log transfers.
Storage Type	Specifies the type of storage device used for log file transfers.
Transfer Frequency	Specifies when the logs are transferred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manually — The transfer starts when you select Start Log Transfer button. If the log fills before being transferred, new events overwrite the oldest events. • Auto at Threshold — The transfer starts automatically when the Percent Filled Threshold is reached.

To transfer the log manually:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Security > Log Management**.
- 2 Specify a Folder Name.
- 3 Click **Start Log Transfer**.

If the specified folder name already exists, the system prompts you to specify a new folder name.

- 4 Wait until the system displays a message that the log transfer has completed successfully before you remove the storage device.

Managing the System Remotely

You can configure, manage, and monitor the system from a computer using the system's web interface. You can also use the Polycom Global Management System, Polycom *ReadiManager SE200*, Polycom CMA, SNMP, or the API commands.



When making a connection from a web browser to configure the HDX system, always enter the address of the HDX system in one of the following formats: `https://hostname` or `https://10.11.12.13`.

Using the HTTPS protocol ensures that the configuration of all login credentials (such as user names and passwords) are transmitted using an encrypted channel. This includes those credentials used to communicate with third-party systems on your network. Using the HTTPS protocol severely limits the ability of anyone on the network to discover these credentials.

- The Polycom HDX Web Interface requires only a web browser.
- Polycom Global Management System, Polycom *ReadiManager SE200*, and Polycom CMA require the management application to be installed on your network.
- SNMP requires network management software on your network management station.
- For more information about the API commands, refer to the *Integrator's Reference Manual for Polycom HDX Systems*.

Using the Polycom HDX Web Interface

You can use the Polycom HDX web interface to perform most of the calling and configuration tasks you can perform on the local system.

Accessing the Polycom HDX Web Interface

To configure your browser to use the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 Be sure that you use Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.x, 7.x, or 8.0 as your web browser.
- 2 Configure the browser to allow cookies.

To access the system using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2 In the browser address line, enter the system's host name or IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.



If Security Mode is enabled on the system, you must use secure HTTPS access, for example, `https://10.11.12.13`. Click **Yes** in the security dialog boxes that appear.

- 3 Enter the Admin ID as the user name (default is "admin"), and enter the Admin Remote Access Password, if one is set.

Monitoring a Room or Call with the Polycom HDX Web Interface

The monitoring feature within the Polycom HDX web interface allows administrators of Polycom HDX systems to view a call or the room where the system is installed.

To enable room and call monitoring:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Security > Security Settings**.
- 2 Select   and enable **Allow Video Display on Web** to allow the room or call to be viewed remotely.

To view a room or call using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Go to **Utilities > Web Director**.
- 4 Perform any of the following tasks:
 - Place or end a call
 - View near and far sites

- Change camera sources
- Adjust camera position
- Zoom cameras
- Adjust system volume settings
- Mute and unmute the microphones

You can view near and far sites without opening Web Director by selecting **Tools > Remote Monitoring**.

Managing System Profiles with the Polycom HDX Web Interface

Administrators managing systems that support multiple applications can change system settings quickly and easily using profiles. You can store a Polycom HDX system profile on a computer as a .profile file using the Polycom HDX web interface. There is no limit to the number of profiles you can save.

The following settings are included in a profile:

- Home screen settings
- User access levels
- Icon selections
- Option keys
- System behaviors

Passwords are not included when you store a profile.



Polycom recommends using profiles only as a way to back up system settings. Attempting to edit a stored profile or upload it to more than one system on the network can result in instability or unexpected results.

To store a profile using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Go to **Utilities > Profile Center**.
- 4 Click **HDX** —> **PC** to download the profile file from the Polycom HDX system.
- 5 Save the file to a location on your computer.

To upload a profile using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 Reset the Polycom HDX system to restore default settings.
- 2 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 3 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 4 Go to **Utilities > Profile Center**.
- 5 Click **Browse** and browse to the location of the profile file on your computer.
- 6 Click **PC** —> **HDX** to upload the .csv file to your system.

Sending a Message

If you are experiencing difficulties with connectivity or audio, you may want to send a message to the system that you are managing.

Only the near site can see the message; it is not broadcast to all the sites in the call.

To send a message using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Enter the Admin ID as the user name (default is "admin"), and enter the Admin Remote Access Password, if one is set.
- 4 Go to **Diagnostics > Send a Message**.
- 5 In the Send a Message page, enter a message (up to 100 characters in length), then click **Send**.

The message is displayed for 15 seconds on the screen of the system that you are managing.

Configuring Global Services

If your organization uses the Polycom Global Management System, you can configure, manage, and monitor the Polycom HDX system using the Global Management System server. Global Management System is a web-based client/server software tool that allows administrators to manage a network of video conferencing systems.

Viewing the Management Servers List

On networks managed by the Global Management System, several Global Servers may be configured to manage this system remotely. The system also has a primary Global Management System server that performs account validation. You can view information about these servers, but this information can only be changed by the Global Management System Administrator.

To view the management servers list:

>> Go to **System > Admin Settings > Global Services > Management Servers**.

Requiring an Account Number for Calls

If your system is set up for use with the Global Management System, the system can prompt the user to enter an account number before placing a call. The account number is added to the Global Management System's Call Detail Record (CDR) and the system's local CDR file (localcdr.csv), and this information can be used for call tracking and billing purposes.

If you do not configure the system to validate account numbers, calls are completed and the entered account number is recorded on the CDR. If you configure the system to validate account numbers, calls are completed only when placed using a valid account number. Account numbers are set up in Global Management System by the Global Management System administrator.

For more information about account validation, please contact your Global Management System administrator.

To require an account number for calls:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Global Services > Account Validation**.
- 2 Specify whether to require an account number for placing calls and whether that number should be validated by the Global Management System server.

Adding Information for the Global Management System Administrator



If your system is managed by Global Management System, you can configure the Polycom HDX system so that users can request help from the Global Management System administrator.

To configure Global Management contact information:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Global Services > My Information**.
- 2 Enter the contact information for the Global Management System administrator for technical support.

The following section illustrates the interaction between Global Management System and the system you are configuring.

Requesting Technical Support from the Global Management System Administrator

If you need to contact the Global Management System administrator, press  on the remote control or keypad from the Place a Call screen, select **Support** and enter a phone number where the administrator can call you back. Then press . The administrator receives an alert to call you at the number you specified.

Setting Up SNMP

The Polycom HDX system sends SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) reports to indicate conditions, including the following:

- All alert conditions found on the Polycom HDX system alert page
- Details of jitter, latency, and packet loss
- Low battery power is detected in the remote control
- A system powers on
- Administrator logon is successful or unsuccessful
- A call fails for a reason other than a busy line
- A user requests help
- A telephone or video call connects or disconnects

Polycom HDX systems are compatible with SNMP versions 1 and 2c.

Downloading MIBs

In order to allow your SNMP management console application to resolve SNMP traps and display human readable text descriptions for those traps, you need to install Polycom MIBs (Management Information Base) on the computer you intend to use as your network management station. The MIBs are available for download from the Polycom HDX web interface.

To download the Polycom MIBs using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a computer, open a web browser.

- 2 In the browser address line, enter the IP address of the system, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Go to **Admin Settings > Global Services > SNMP**.
- 4 Click **Download MIB** and follow the onscreen instructions.

Configuring for SNMP Management

To configure the Polycom HDX system for SNMP Management:

- 1 Access the SNMP configuration screen either in the Polycom HDX web interface or on the Polycom HDX system. In the Polycom HDX web interface go to **Admin Settings > Global Services > SNMP**. On the Polycom HDX system go to **System > Admin Settings > Global Services > SNMP**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the SNMP screen:

Setting	Description
Enable SNMP	Allows administrators to manage the system remotely using SNMP.
Trap Version	Specifies the trap protocol that the system uses. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • v2c—System uses the v2c trap. • v1—System uses the v1 trap.
Read-Only Community	Specifies the SNMP management community in which you want to enable this system. The default community is public . Note: Polycom does not support SNMP write operations for configuration and provisioning; the read-only community string is used for both read operations and outgoing SNMP traps.
Contact Name	Specifies the name of the person responsible for remote management of this system.
Location Name	Specifies the location of the system.
System Description	Specifies the type of video conferencing device.
Console IP Address	Specifies the IP address of the computer you intend to use as your network management station and to which SNMP traps will be sent.

Using a Provisioning Service

If your organization uses the Polycom CMA system, you can manage Polycom HDX systems in VC2 mode. In VC2 mode, which is also known as dynamic management mode, the following may be true:

- Register Polycom HDX systems with a standards-based presence service, so that presence states are shared with Contacts
- Provide Polycom HDX systems with access to a corporate directory that supports LDAP access
- The Domain, User Name, Password, and Server Address fields are populated on the Provisioning Service screen.
- Every time the system restarts, and at regular intervals (of between 5 minutes to 24 hours, as defined by the service), it checks for updates from the service. If updates are available, the Polycom HDX system automatically sets any configuration items provided by the provisioning service.
- Configuration settings that are provisioned, or that are dependent on provisioned values, are read-only on the Polycom HDX system.
- The Polycom HDX system checks for new software from the Polycom CMA system server every time it restarts and at an interval set by the service. It automatically accesses and runs any software updates made available by the Polycom CMA system server.
- If the system has previously registered successfully with a provisioning service but fails to detect the service when it restarts or checks for updates, an alert appears on the System Status screen. If the system loses registration with the provisioning service, it continues operating with the most recent configuration that it received from the provisioning service.

Enabling or Disabling the Provisioning Service

You can register the Polycom HDX system with the Polycom CMA system in several ways:

- If the system detects a provisioning service on the network while running the setup wizard, it prompts you to enter information for registration with the service. Similarly, if the system detects provisioning data on a USB device while the running the setup wizard, it uses that information to attempt to register with the service.

The setup wizard is available during initial setup, after a software update or system reset with system settings deleted, or after using the restore button. For information about the USB device data, or about configuring the Polycom CMA system server so that Polycom HDX systems detect and register with it, refer to the *Deploying Visual Communications Administration Guide*.

- You can enter the registration information and attempt to register in the Polycom HDX system's Admin Settings.

To enable a provisioning service in the Admin Settings:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Global Services > Provisioning Service** in the system's local interface.
- 2 Enter the Domain, User Name, Password, and Server Address for automatic provisioning. Multiple Polycom HDX systems can be registered to a single user.
- 3 Select **Register**. The system tries to register with the Polycom CMA system using NTLM authentication.

To disable a provisioning service:

To disable automatic provisioning on a Polycom HDX system, run the setup wizard and cancel registration with the provisioning service.

- 1 Select **System > Diagnostics > Reset System**.
- 2 Enter the system serial number, and enable **Delete System Settings**.
- 3 Select **Reset System**. The system restarts and runs the setup wizard.
- 4 Remove your information from the Provisioning Service screen when it appears in the setup wizard. Then select **Cancel** when you get the message that registration failed.

Provisioning Service Settings

If automatic provisioning is enabled but the system does not register successfully with the provisioning service, you might need to change the Domain, User Name, Password, or Server Address used for registration. For example, users might be required to periodically reset passwords used to log into the network from a computer. If such a network password is also used as the provisioning service password, you must update it on the Polycom HDX system, too. To avoid unintentionally locking a user out of network access in this case, Polycom HDX systems will not automatically retry registration until you update the settings and register manually on the Provisioning Service screen.

To configure the provisioning service settings:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Global Services > Provisioning Service** in the system's local interface or web interface.
- 2 Configure these settings.

Setting	Description
Domain	Specifies the domain for registering to the provisioning service.
User Name	Specifies the endpoint's user name for registering to the provisioning service.
Password	Specifies the password that registers the system to the provisioning service.
Server Address	Specifies the address of the Polycom CMA system running the provisioning service.

Keeping your Software Current

If you have Internet access and a software key, you can update the Polycom HDX system software. If you do not have Internet access, your reseller can supply you with the Polycom HDX system software update on CD-ROM.

Refer to the *Release Notes for Polycom HDX Systems* for information about the latest software version. Refer to *Installing Polycom HDX Software and Options* for detailed information about obtaining software key codes and using the Software Update.



If your organization uses a management system for provisioning endpoints, your Polycom HDX system may get software updates automatically.

To download the software package:

- 1 On a computer, open Internet Explorer version 6.x, 7.x, or 8.0.
- 2 Go to www.polycom.com/support.
- 3 Navigate to your product downloads.
- 4 Download the appropriate software package.
- 5 Use the web-based Software Update or the USB port on the system to update the Polycom HDX system software.



Do not power off the system during the software upgrade process. If the upgrade is interrupted, the system may become unusable.


To update system software using the Polycom HDX Web Interface:

- 1 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
If Security Mode is enabled on the system, you must use secure HTTPS access, for example, `https://10.11.12.13`. Click **Yes** in the security dialog boxes that appear.
- 2 Enter the Admin ID as the user name (default is "admin"), and enter the Admin Remote Access Password, if one is set.
- 3 Go to **Admin Settings > General Settings > Software Update**, and follow the instructions on the screen.

To update system software using the USB port on a Polycom HDX system:

After version 2.0 or higher is installed on a Polycom HDX system, you can install software using the USB port on the system.

- 1 Save a single software package (.pup) file and single key code (.txt) file to the root of a USB storage device.
- 2 Connect the USB storage device to the USB port on the system.
A prompt appears for installing the software found on the USB device.
- 3 Follow the instructions on the screen.

If you choose to cancel the installation, you can install the software at a later time by pressing  **Option** on the remote control or keypad and selecting **Software Update**.



If you follow the procedure to restore the system to factory defaults while a USB storage device is connected, the system restores from the USB device instead of the system's factory partition.

Control Devices

Configuring Remote Control Behavior

You can customize the behavior of the remote control to support the users' environment.



Polycom HDX 6000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, and Polycom HDX 8000 series systems *must* have a Polycom EagleEye HD or Polycom EagleEye 1080 camera connected to receive signals from the remote control.

To configure remote control behavior:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > System Settings > Remote Control/Keypad**.
- 2 Configure these settings on the Remote Control/Keypad screen:

Setting	Description
Keypad Audio Confirmation	Specifies whether to play a voice confirmation of numbers selected with the remote control or keypad.
Numeric Keypad Function	Specifies whether pressing number buttons on the remote control or keypad moves the camera to presets or generates touch tones (DTMF tones). If this is set to Presets , users can generate DTMF tones by pressing <input type="text" value="#"/> while on a video screen.






Setting	Description
Use Non-Polycom Remote	Configures the system to accept input from a programmable, non-Polycom remote control. In most cases the Polycom remote works as designed, even when this feature is enabled. However, try disabling this feature if you experience difficulty with the Polycom remote. For more information about Polycom HDX system IR codes, refer to the <i>Integrator's Reference Manual for Polycom HDX Systems</i> .
Channel ID	Specifies the IR identification channel to which the Polycom HDX system responds. Set the Channel ID to the same channel as the remote control. The default setting is 3. If the remote control is set to channel 3, it can control a Polycom HDX system set to any Channel ID. For more information about changing this setting, refer to Configuring the Remote Control Channel ID .
Chinese Virtual Keyboard	Specifies the type of onscreen keyboard to display for Simplified Chinese. This setting is only available when the system's Language is set to Simplified Chinese.

Configuring the Remote Control Channel ID

You can configure the Channel ID so that the remote control affects only one Polycom HDX system, even if there are other systems in the same room.

If the remote control is set to channel 3, it can control a Polycom HDX system set to any Channel ID. If the system does not respond to the remote control, set the remote control channel ID to 3 starting with step 3 in the following procedure. Then follow the entire procedure to configure the system and remote control channel ID settings.

To configure the channel ID for a Polycom HDX system and remote control:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > System Settings > Remote Control/Keypad**.
- 2 Set the **Channel ID**.
- 3 While blocking the IR signal from the remote control using your hand or some other object, press and hold the  **Option** button for 5 seconds.
- 4 Press  once to **Set ID**.
- 5 Press the right arrow to change the setting.
- 6 Press  or  to select the channel ID that you configured on the system.
- 7 Press  to select the new setting.



Configuring the Remote to Control a Recording Device



You can program the Polycom HDX system remote control to control a specific recording or playback device such as a VCR or DVD player.

For a list of codes, refer to [Codes for Remote Control Recording Device Buttons](#) on page D-1.

To program the remote to control a recording device:

- 1 Press and hold the  **Option** button for 5 seconds.
- 2 Press the right arrow to select **Set Code**.
- 3 Enter the four-digit code for your recording device.
- 4 Press  to select the new setting.

The remote control can also be used to control a Polycom RSS™ 2000 system by sending audible DTMF tones across the call. For more information, refer to the *Polycom RSS 2000 User Guide* available on the Polycom web site.

Connecting Control and Accessibility Equipment

The Polycom HDX 9004 provides two serial ports. The Polycom HDX 9002, Polycom HDX 9001, Polycom HDX 8000 series, and Polycom HDX 7000 series systems provide one serial port. Depending on your system's capabilities, you may be able to use the RS-232 serial ports to:

- Connect a modem and use a closed captioning service
- Pass data from a device connected to your system to a device connected to the far site system
- Control the system through a touch-panel using the API (not available on the Polycom HDX 7000 series)
- Provide control signals for an additional camera
- Provide control signals for a Polycom Vortex mixer



You will need to configure the RS-232 equipment according to the manufacturer's instructions, and you will need to configure the RS-232 serial port on the system exactly the same way.

Make sure that the system is powered off before you connect devices to it.

Connecting Touch-Panel Controls

You can connect an AMX or Crestron control panel to a Polycom HDX 9000 series or Polycom HDX 8000 series system RS-232 serial port as part of a custom room installation. You will need to program the control panel. Refer to the *Integrator's Reference Manual for Polycom HDX Systems* for information about the API commands.

Connecting IR Sensors to Polycom HDX Systems

The Polycom HDX 9000 series provides a connector for an external IR sensor. Refer to your system's setup sheet for connection details.

The Polycom HDX 9000 series is compatible with the following IR sensors:

- Xantech® 480-00
- Xantech 490-90
- Xantech 780-80
- Xantech 780-90

Configuring RS-232 Serial Port Settings

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > General Settings > Serial Ports**.
- 2 Configure these settings for a Polycom HDX 9000 series, Polycom HDX 8000 series, or Polycom HDX 7000 series system:

Setting	Description
RS-232 Mode	<p>Specifies the mode used for the serial port. Available settings depend on the Polycom HDX system model.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off—Disables the serial port. • Control—Receives control signals from a touch-panel control. Allows any device connected to the RS-232 port to control the system using API commands. (not available on the Polycom HDX 7000 series) • Camera PTZ—Provides control signals to a PTZ camera. • Closed Caption—Receives closed captions from a captioning service using a modem, or directly from a captioner's computer via Telnet. • Vortex Mixer—Provides control signals to a Polycom Vortex mixer. • Pass Thru—Passes data to an RS-232 device connected to the serial port of the far-site system. • Polycom Annotation—Provides control signals to the Polycom Instructor™ FS. • Interactive Touch Board—Provides control signals to a Polycom SMART board device.
Baud Rate, Parity, Data Bits, Stop Bits	Set these to the same values that they are set to on the serial device.
RS-232 Flow Control	When a Vortex is connected to an RS-232 connector on the Polycom HDX system, set both to Hardware . This is selectable when RS-232 Mode is set to Vortex Mixer or Pass Thru .
Camera Control	Specifies which camera to control when RS-232 Mode is set to Camera PTZ .
Detect Camera	Detects the camera specified for Camera Control .

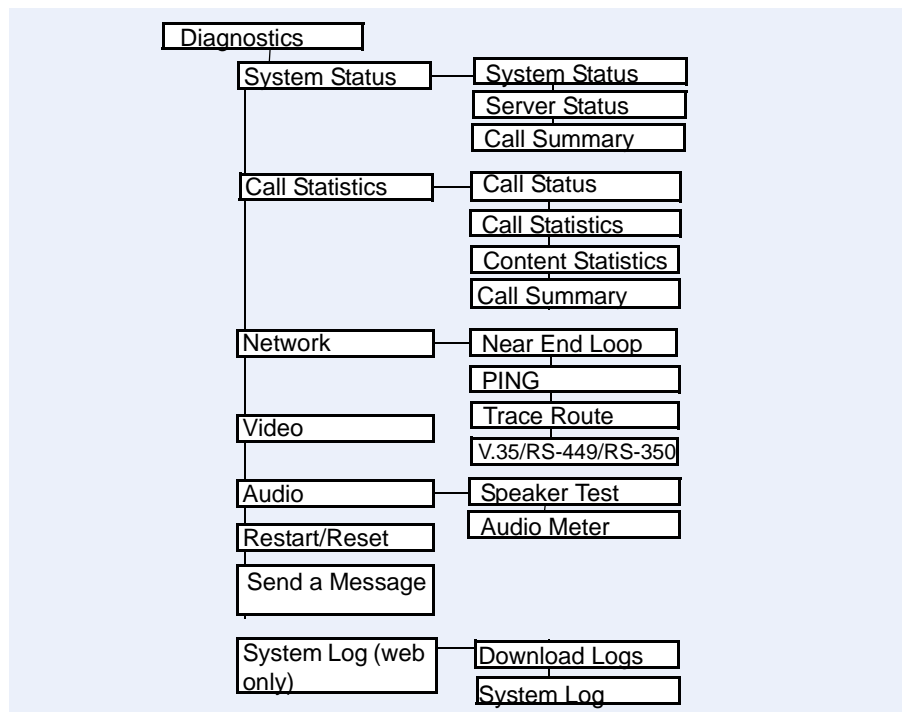
- 3 For a Polycom HDX 9004, select  and configure the settings for port 2.

Statistics and Diagnostics

The Polycom HDX system provides various screens that allow you to review information about calls made by the system and to review network usage and performance.

Diagnostic Screens

The following Diagnostics screens are available on the system and in the Polycom HDX web interface.




To access the Diagnostics screens on the system:

>> Go to **System > Diagnostics**.


To access the Diagnostics screens using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2 *In the browser address line*, enter the system's IP address, for example, http://10.11.12.13, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Enter the Admin ID as the user name (default is "admin"), and enter the Admin Remote Access Password, if one is set.
- 4 Click **Diagnostics** from any page in the Polycom HDX web interface.


System Status

Diagnostic Screen	Description
System Status	<p>Displays system status information, including auto-answer point to point, remote control battery, IP network, meeting password, log threshold, and ISDN lines. For an explanation of any of the status items, select the item and press  on the remote.</p> <p>When there is a change in system status or a potential problem, you see an alert at the bottom of the home screen.</p>

Server Status

Diagnostic Screen	Description
Server Status	<p>Displays server status information, including time server, global directory, provisioning service, presence service, and gatekeeper. For an explanation of any of the status items, select the item and press  on the remote.</p> <p>When there is a change in server status or a potential problem, you see an alert at the bottom of the home screen.</p>

Call Statistics

Diagnostic Screen	Description
Call Status (system only)	<p>Displays call type, data speed, and number dialed for the current call. You can highlight the spheres on this screen to see the number dialed, the relevant status code, and details of any errors.</p> <p>In ISDN calls, this screen also displays connection status for each channel.</p> <p>In calls placed through a V.35/RS-449/RS-530 network interface, this screen displays the states of these signals:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DTR • RTS • CTS • DSR • DCD • RI <p>Bright indicators show high signals; dim indicators show low signals.</p>
Call Statistics (1)	<p>Displays information about the call in progress. In multipoint calls, the Call Statistics screens show most of this information for all systems in the call.</p> <p>View Call Statistics during a call by pressing  Info on the remote.</p> <p>Call Statistics (1)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Call speed (transmit and receive) • Video protocol, annexes, and format in use (transmit and receive). The video protocol is shown in green if the system is currently using error concealment. • Audio protocol in use (transmit and receive) • Number of packets lost and percentage packet loss (transmit and receive) in IP calls • Encryption type, key exchange algorithm type, and key exchange check code (if the encryption option is enabled and the call is encrypted) • Far site details and call type
Call Statistics (2)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Audio and video data rates specified (transmit and receive) • Video data rate and frame rate in use (transmit and receive) • Video packet loss and jitter in IP calls • Audio packet loss and jitter in IP calls • Far site details and call type <p>Content Statistics</p> <p>The Content Statistics screen shows statistics for content shared during a call.</p>
Call Summary (system only)	<p>Displays calling information, such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Duration of the last call • Total number of calls placed and received • Number, total time, and percentage of IP calls • Number, total time, and percentage of ISDN calls

Network

Diagnostic Screen	Description
Near End Loop	<p>Tests the internal audio encoders and decoders, the external microphones and speakers, the internal video encoders and decoders, and the external cameras and monitors.</p> <p>Monitor 1 displays the video and plays the audio that would be sent to the far site in a call.</p> <p>This test is not available when you are in a call.</p>
PING	<p>Tests whether the system can establish contact with a far-site IP address that you specify.</p> <p>PING returns abbreviated Internet Control Message Protocol results. It returns H.323 information only if the far site is configured for H.323. It returns SIP information only if the far site is configured for SIP.</p> <p>If the test is successful, the Polycom HDX system displays a message indicating that the IP address under test is available.</p>
Trace Route	<p>Tests the routing path between the local system and the IP address entered.</p> <p>If the test is successful, the Polycom HDX system lists the hops between the system and the IP address you entered.</p>
V.35/RS-449/RS-530 Serial Status screen (system only)	<p>Displays the states of these signals:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DTR • RTS • CTS • DSR • DCD • RI <p>Bright indicators show high signals; dim indicators show low signals.</p>

Video

Diagnostic Screen	Description
Video Diagnostics	<p>Tests the color settings of your monitor for optimum picture quality.</p> <p>If the color bars generated during the test are not clear, or the colors do not look correct, the monitor needs to be adjusted.</p>

Audio

Diagnostic Screen	Description
Speaker Test	<p>Tests the audio cable connections. A 473 Hz audio tone indicates that the local audio connections are correct.</p> <p>If you run the test from the system during a call, the far site will also hear the tone.</p> <p>If you run the test from the Polycom HDX web interface during a call, the people at the site you are testing will hear the tone, but you will not.</p>
Audio Meter	<p>Measures the strength of audio signals from microphone(s), far-site audio, VCR audio, and any device connected to the audio line in.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To check the microphone(s), speak into the microphone. • To check far-site audio, ask a participant at the far site to speak or call a phone in the far-site room to hear it ring. • To check a VCR or DVD, connect it to the VCR inputs and play the VCR or DVD to test the audio. <p>The Audio Meters indicate peak signal levels. Set signal levels so that you see peaks between +3dB and +7dB with normal speech and program material. Occasional peaks of +12dB to +16dB with loud transient noises are considered acceptable. A meter reading of +20dB corresponds to 0dBFS in the Polycom HDX system audio. A signal at this level is likely clipping the audio system.</p> <p>Meters function only when the associated input is enabled.</p> <p>Note: Some audio meters are unavailable when a SoundStructure digital mixer is connected to the Polycom HDX system.</p>

Reset or Restart System

Diagnostic Tool	Description
Restart (web only) Reset System (system only)	Restart in the web interface cycles power to the system. Note: If a password is set, you must enter it to reset the system. When you choose Reset System using the remote control, the system's user interface allows you to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Keep your system settings (such as system name and network configuration) or restore factory settings. • Keep or delete the directory stored on the system. System reset does not affect the global directory. You may wish to download the CDR and CDR archive before you reset the system. See Call Detail Report (CDR) on page 11-7.

Recent Calls

When the **Call Detail Report** setting is enabled, Recent Calls shows a list of up to 99 calls made by the system. It includes the following information:

- Site name or number
- Date and time
- Call in or out


The Recent Calls list shows incoming and outgoing calls that connect, as well as outgoing calls that do not connect.

If Do Not Disturb has been enabled, any incoming calls attempted by other sites will not be listed.

The home screen can be configured to include Recent Calls. For more information about including the Recent Calls list on the home screen, see [Customizing the Home Screen](#) on page 7-3.

To view the Recent Calls screen:

>> Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > Recent Calls**.

You can see more detail about any call by highlighting an entry and pressing  **Info** on the remote. Information includes the far site's number and name, and the type, speed (bandwidth), and duration of the call.

If you need even more detail about calls, you can view or download the Call Detail Report (CDR) from the Polycom HDX web interface. For more information about the CDR, see [Call Detail Report \(CDR\)](#) on page 11-7.

Call Detail Report (CDR)

When enabled, the Call Detail Report (CDR) provides the system's call history. You can view the CDR from the Polycom HDX web interface. Within 5 minutes of the end of the call, the CDR is written to memory and then you can download the data in CSV format for sorting and formatting.

Every call that connects is added to the CDR, whether it is a call that you make or that you receive. If a call does not connect, the report shows the reason. In multipoint calls, each far site is shown as a separate call, but all have the same conference number.

The CDR does not include incoming calls that the Polycom HDX system does not answer, so if calls were missed while Do Not Disturb was enabled, details will not be included in the CDR.

To view and download the CDR using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a PC, open a web browser.
- 2 *In the browser address line*, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Enter the Admin ID as the user name (default is "admin"), and enter the Admin Remote Access Password, if one is set.
- 4 Click **Utilities > Call Detail Report** to view the details of the file.
- 5 Click **Save** and then specify a location on your computer to save the file.

Information in the CDR

The following table describes the data fields in the CDR.

Data	Description
Row ID	Each call is logged on the first available row. A call is a connection to a single site, so there may be more than one call in a conference.
Start Date	The call start date, in the format dd-mm-yyyy.
Start Time	The call start time, in the 24-hour format hh:mm:ss.
End Date	The call end date.
End Time	The call end time.
Call Duration	The length of the call.
Account Number	If Require Account Number to Dial is enabled on the system, the value entered by the user is displayed in this field.

Data	Description
Remote System Name	The far site's system name.
Call Number 1	The number dialed from the first call field, not necessarily the transport address. For incoming calls — The caller ID information from the first number received from a far site.
Call Number 2 (If applicable for call)	For outgoing calls — The number dialed from the second call field, not necessarily the transport address. For incoming calls — The caller ID information from the second number received from a far site.
Transport Type	The type of call — Either H.320 (ISDN), H.323 (IP), or SIP.
Call Rate	The bandwidth negotiated with the far site.
System Manufacturer	The name of the system manufacturer, model, and software version, if they can be determined.
Call Direction	In — For calls received. Out — For calls placed from the system.
Conference ID	A number given to each conference. A conference can include more than one far site, so there may be more than one row with the same conference ID.
Call ID	Identifies individual calls within the same conference.
Total H.320 Channels Used	The total number of ISDN B channels used in the call. For example, a 384K call would use six B channels.
Endpoint Alias	The alias of the far site.
Endpoint Additional Alias	An additional alias of the far site.
Endpoint Remote Type	Terminal, gateway, or MCU.
Endpoint Transport Address	The actual address of the far site (not necessarily the address dialed).
Audio Protocol (Tx)	The audio protocol transmitted to the far site, such as G.728 or G.722.1.
Audio Protocol (Rx)	The audio protocol received from the far site, such as G.728 or G.722.
Video Protocol (Tx)	The video protocol transmitted to the far site, such as H.263 or H.264.
Video Protocol (Rx)	The video protocol received from the far site, such as H.261 or H.263.

Data	Description
Video Format (Tx)	The video format transmitted to the far site, such as CIF or SIF.
Video Format (Rx)	The video format received from the far site, such as CIF or SIF.
Disconnect Local ID and Disconnect Reason	The description of the Q.850 (ISDN) cause code showing how the call ended.
Q.850 Cause Code	The Q.850 cause code showing how the call ended.
Total H.320 Errors	The number of errors during an H.320 call.
Average Percent of Packet Loss (Tx)	The combined average of the percentage of both audio and video packets transmitted that were lost during the 5 seconds preceding the moment at which a sample was taken. This value does not report a cumulative average for the entire H.323 call. However, it does report an average of the sampled values.
Average Percent of Packet Loss (Rx)	The combined average of the percentage of both audio and video packets received that were lost during the 5 seconds preceding the moment at which a sample was taken. This value does not report a cumulative average for the entire H.323 call. However, it does report an average of the sampled values.
Average Packets Lost (Tx)	The number of packets transmitted that were lost during an H.323 call.
Average Packets Lost (Rx)	The number of packets from the far site that were lost during an H.323 call.
Average Latency (Tx)	The average latency of packets transmitted during an H.323 call based on round-trip delay, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.
Average Latency (Rx)	The average latency of packets received during an H.323 call based on round-trip delay, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.
Maximum Latency (Tx)	The maximum latency for packets transmitted during an H.323 call based on round-trip delay, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.
Maximum Latency (Rx)	The maximum latency for packets received during an H.323 call based on round-trip delay, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.
Average Jitter (Tx)	The average jitter of packets transmitted during an H.323 call, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.

Data	Description
Average Jitter (Rx)	The average jitter of packets received during an H.323 call, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.
Maximum Jitter (Tx)	The maximum jitter of packets transmitted during an H.323 call, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.
Maximum Jitter (Rx)	The maximum jitter of packets received during an H.323 call, calculated from sample tests done once per minute.

Call Detail Report Archives

Calls are added to the CDR until the file size reaches 50 KB, which is equivalent to about 150 calls. The system then automatically archives the CDR and creates a new CDR file. If an archive is already present, the new archive overwrites it.

The CDR starts with Row 1, but the conference numbers continue from the file most recently archived. Conference numbering restarts at 1 after the system assigns conference number 100,000.

To view and download a CDR archive using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a PC, open a web browser.
- 2 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Enter the Admin ID as the user name (default is "admin"), and enter the Admin Remote Access Password, if one is set.
- 4 Click **Utilities > Call Detail Report** to view the details of the file.
- 5 Click **Save Archive** and then specify a location on your computer to save the file.

System Logs

You can use the Polycom HDX system local interface or web interface to download system logs. For information about downloading logs from the local interface, refer to [Setting up Log Management](#) on page 8-13.

Downloading System Logs from the Polycom HDX Web Interface

The support information package contains logs, configuration settings, and other diagnostic information.

To download a system log using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a PC, open a web browser.
- 2 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Enter the Admin ID as the user name (default is "admin"), and enter the Admin Remote Access Password, if one is set.
- 4 Click **Diagnostics > System Log > Download Logs**.
- 5 Click **Download support information package** and then specify a location on your computer to save the file.

System Log Settings in the Polycom HDX Web Interface

To configure system log settings using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a PC, open a web browser.
- 2 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Enter the Admin ID as the user name (default is "admin"), and enter the Admin Remote Access Password, if one is set.
- 4 Click **Diagnostics > System Log > System Log Settings**.

5 Configure these settings:

Setting	Description
Log Level	<p>Sets the minimum log level of messages stored in the Polycom HDX system flash memory. DEBUG logs all messages. WARNING logs the fewest number of messages.</p> <p>Polycom recommends leaving this setting at the default value of DEBUG.</p>
Remote Logging Enabled	<p>Specifies whether remote logging is enabled. Enabling this setting causes the Polycom HDX system to send each log message to the specified server in addition to logging it locally.</p> <p>The system immediately begins forwarding its log messages when you click Update.</p> <p>Encryption is not supported for remote logging, so Polycom recommends remote logging only for secure, local networks.</p>
Remote Log Server	<p>Specifies the domain name or IP address of the syslog server. The server must support the standard syslog protocol (RFC 3164).</p>
Enable ISDN Trace	<p>Logs additional ISDN connectivity information.</p>
Enable H.323 Trace	<p>Logs additional H.323 connectivity information.</p>



Troubleshooting

For more troubleshooting information, you can search the Knowledge Base at www.polycom.com/support.

Placing a Test Call

When you finish configuring the system, you can use one of the sample numbers in the directory to test your setup.

To place a test call:

- 1 On the home screen, select  **Directory**.
- 2 Select **Group**.
- 3 Select **Sample Sites** and highlight a location.
- 4 Press  **Call** on the remote control or keypad.

You can also find a list of worldwide numbers that you can use to test your Polycom HDX system at www.polycom.com/videtest.

If you have trouble making video calls:

- Make sure the number you dialed is correct, then try the call again. For example, you may need to dial 9 for an outside line or include a long distance access code or country code.
- To find out if the problem exists in your system, ask the person you were trying to reach to call you instead.
- Find out if the system you are calling has its power turned on and is functioning properly.
- If you can make calls but not receive them, make sure that your system is configured with the correct number.

Enabling Basic Mode

Basic Mode is a limited operating mode that uses H.261 for video and G.711 for audio. It provides administrators with a workaround for interoperability issues that cannot be solved using other methods. The Basic Mode setting stays in effect until you change it.



Basic Mode disables many system features such as content sharing, far end camera control, AES encryption, and advanced audio and video algorithms. Audio and video quality is degraded in this mode. Use Basic Mode only when calling systems that fail to operate properly with these advanced features.

To enable Basic Mode in the Polycom HDX system interface:

- 1 Go to **System > Admin Settings > Network > Call Preference**.
- 2 Select **Basic Mode**.

To enable Basic Mode using the Polycom HDX web interface:

- 1 On a computer, open a web browser.
- 2 In the browser address line, enter the system's IP address, for example, `http://10.11.12.13`, to go to the Polycom HDX web interface.
- 3 Go to **Admin Settings > Network > Call Preference**.
- 4 Select **Enable Basic Mode**.

Using the Restore Button

You can use the hardware restore button on the Polycom HDX system to reset the system in one of these ways:

- Restoring configuration—Restores the configuration, which resets most system settings to default values.
- Factory restore—Completely erases the system and restores it to the software version and default configuration stored in its factory partition. If you follow this procedure while a USB storage device is connected, the system restores from the USB device instead of the system's factory partition.

The restore button is on the front of the Polycom HDX 9000 series system, as shown in the following figure.



The restore button is on the front of the Polycom HDX 8000 series, Polycom HDX 7000 series, and Polycom HDX 4000 series systems, as shown in the following figure.



Restoring Configuration

If the system is not functioning correctly or you have forgotten the Admin Room Password, you can use the restore button to delete system settings and restart the system. This operation is similar to using the Reset System feature on the system Diagnostics screen with **Delete System Settings** enabled.

The following items are saved:

- Current software version
- Option keys
- Remote control channel ID setting
- Directory entries
- CDR data and logs

To reset system configuration using the restore button:

>> While the system is powered on, press and hold the restore button for at least 15 seconds.

After 15 seconds, the system restarts and displays the setup wizard.

Performing a Factory Restore

If the Polycom HDX system will not start up or develops serious problems after a software update, you can use the restore button to restart the system with its factory partition software. This operation completely erases the system's flash memory and reinstalls the software version and default configuration stored in its factory partition.

The following items are *not* saved:

- Software updates
- All system settings including option keys and the remote control channel ID
- Directory entries
- CDR data



If you follow the procedure to restore the system to factory defaults while a USB storage device is connected, the system restores from the USB device instead of the system's factory partition.

To reset the system to its factory partition software using the restore button:

- 1 While the system is powered off, press and hold the restore button.
- 2 While holding the restore button, press the power button once.
- 3 Keep holding the restore button for 5 more seconds, then release it.

During the factory restore process, the system displays the Polycom startup screen on component monitors. Other types of monitors will be blank. Do not power off the system during the factory restore process. The system restarts automatically when the process is complete.

Deleting Files

You can remove customer data and configuration information from the system for security purposes.





To perform a logical delete of the system files:

- 1 Power off the system by holding down the Power button for 3 to 5 seconds.
- 2 Unplug all network connections.
- 3 Perform a factory restore.
- 4 Wait for the system to start up and display the setup wizard.

- 5 While the system is powered on, press and hold the restore button for at least 15 seconds. After 15 seconds, the system restarts and displays the setup wizard.
- 6 Power off the system.

Changing the Video Format

If you cannot see the user interface on the system's monitor, make sure that the system and the monitor are both powered on, and then do one of the following:

- Go to the Polycom HDX web interface, select **Admin Settings > Monitors**, change the **Video Format**, and click **Update**.
- Press and hold  **Display** on the remote control for 5 seconds. Press  or  to display the new video format in the remote control window, then press  to save your change. If you select a format that is not supported by the system, the default output format is applied.

How to Contact Technical Support

If you are not able to make test calls successfully and you have verified that the equipment is installed and set up correctly, contact your Polycom distributor or Polycom Technical Support.

To contact Polycom Technical Support, go to www.polycom.com/support.

Enter the following information, then ask a question or describe the problem. This information helps us to respond faster to your issue:

- The 14-digit serial number from the **System Information** screen or the back of the system
- The software version (from the **home** screen, select **System > System Information**)
- Information about your network
- Troubleshooting steps you have already tried

Polycom Solution Support

Polycom Implementation and Maintenance services provide support for Polycom solution components only. Additional services for supported third-party Unified Communications (UC) environments integrated with Polycom solutions are available from Polycom Global Services, and its certified Partners, to help customers successfully design, deploy, optimize, and manage Polycom visual communication within their third-party UC environments. UC Professional Services for Microsoft Integration is mandatory for Polycom Conferencing for Microsoft Outlook and Microsoft Office Communications Server integrations. For additional information and details please see

http://www.polycom.com/services/professional_services/index.html or contact your local Polycom representative.

Regulatory Notices

Important Safeguards

Read and understand the following instructions before using the system:

- Close supervision is necessary when the system is used by or near children. Do not leave unattended while in use.
- Only use electrical extension cords with a current rating at least equal to that of the system.
- Always disconnect the system from power before cleaning and servicing and when not in use.
- Do not spray liquids directly onto the system when cleaning. Always apply the liquid first to a static free cloth.
- Do not immerse the system in any liquid or place any liquids on it.
- Do not disassemble this system. To reduce the risk of shock and to maintain the warranty on the system, a qualified technician must perform service or repair work.
- Connect this appliance to a grounded outlet.
- Only connect the system to surge protected power outlets.
- Keep ventilation openings free of any obstructions.
- If the system or any accessories are installed in an enclosed space such as a cabinet, ensure that the air temperature in the enclosure does not exceed 40°C (104° F). You may need to provide forced cooling to keep the equipment within its operating temperature range.
- Caution – To reduce the risk of fire, use only No. 26AWG or larger telecommunication line cord.
- Do not use this product near water.
- Avoid using this product during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.

Electrical Specifications

Polycom HDX 9004, Polycom HDX 9002, Polycom HDX 9001: 100-240 VAC, 50-60 Hz, 4 A

Polycom HDX 9006, Polycom HDX 8000 series: 100-240 VAC, 50-60 Hz, 2.3 A

Polycom HDX 7000 series: 100-240 VAC, 50-60 Hz, 2.3 A

Polycom HDX 6000 series: 100-240 VAC, 50-60 Hz, 1.6 A

Polycom HDX 4000 series system: 100-240 VAC, 50-60 Hz, 2.3 A

Polycom HDX 4000 series monitor: 100-240 VAC, 50-60 Hz, 1.5 A

License Restrictions

THE SOFTWARE PROGRAMS CONTAINED OR DESCRIBED HEREIN ARE CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION AND PROPRIETARY PRODUCTS OF POLYCOM, INC. OR ITS LICENSORS.

Buyer shall not sublicense or otherwise distribute any of the Subject Programs except to End Users and/or resellers who have entered into a Sublicense Agreement. For purposes of this Agreement a "Sublicense Agreement" shall mean a written license agreement between the Buyer and its purchaser, or, in the case of any sale by Buyer to a reseller, between such reseller and the End User, that is either 1) signed by the End User or 2) included with the Documentation, in such a manner that the End User reasonably indicates its acceptance of the Sublicense Agreement by turning on and using the Computer Equipment. Polycom, Inc. shall include so-called "break the seal software licenses" with the Documentation, and Buyer shall not remove or alter any such Sublicense Agreements or any notifications or warning stickers relating thereto. Buyer shall not waive, amend, or otherwise modify any Sublicense Agreement without Polycom's prior consent.

Title to all Subject Programs shall at all times remain and vest solely with Polycom, Inc. and its licensors. Buyer acknowledges Polycom's claim that the Subject Programs are its trade secret and confidential property, and shall treat them as such. Buyer will not attempt to disassemble, decompile, reverse-engineer or otherwise endeavor to discover or disclose the methods and concepts embodied in the Subject Programs. Except as expressly allowed under this Agreement, the Buyer shall not copy, modify, transcribe, store, translate, sell, lease, or otherwise transfer or distribute any of the Subject Programs in whole or in part, without prior authorization, in writing, from Polycom, Inc. Buyer shall not remove or destroy any copyright, patent, trademark or other proprietary mark or notice on Computer Equipment, and shall reproduce any such marks on any copies of Subject Programs that it makes hereunder.

You shall not, and shall not allow, any third party to 1) decompile, disassemble, or otherwise reverse-engineer or attempt to reconstruct or discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the software by any means whatsoever or 2) remove any product.

Warranty Information

LIMITED WARRANTY. Polycom warrants to the end user ("Customer") that the product will be free from defects in workmanship and materials, under normal use and service, for one year, or such longer period as Polycom may announce publicly from time to time for particular products, from the date of purchase from Polycom or its authorized reseller. This warranty covers the product acquired by the consumer including all of its accessories, components, and parts thereto.

Polycom's sole obligation under this express warranty shall be, at Polycom's option and expense, to repair the defective product or part, deliver to Customer an equivalent product or part to replace the defective item, or if neither of the two foregoing options is reasonably available, Polycom may, in its sole discretion, refund to Customer the purchase price paid for the defective product. All products that are replaced will become the property of Polycom. Replacement products or parts may be new or reconditioned. Polycom warrants any replaced or repaired product or part for ninety (90) days from shipment, or the remainder of the initial warranty period, whichever is longer.

Products returned to Polycom must be sent prepaid and packaged appropriately for safe shipment, and it is recommended that they be insured or sent by a method that provides for tracking of the package. Responsibility for loss or damage does not transfer to Polycom until the returned item is received by Polycom. The repaired or replaced item will be shipped to Customer, at Polycom's expense, not later than thirty (30) days after Polycom receives the defective product, and Polycom will retain risk of loss or damage until the item is delivered to Customer.

Warranty Information

EXCLUSIONS. Polycom will not be liable under this limited warranty if its testing and examination disclose that the alleged defect or malfunction in the product does not exist or results from:

- Failure to follow Polycom's installation, operation, or maintenance instructions.
- Unauthorized product modification or alteration.
- Unauthorized use of common carrier communication services accessed through the product.
- Abuse, misuse, negligent acts or omissions of Customer and persons under Customer's control; or
- Acts of third parties, acts of God, accident, fire, lightning, power surges or outages, or other hazards.

WARRANTY EXCLUSIVE. IF A POLYCOM PRODUCT DOES NOT OPERATE AS WARRANTED ABOVE, CUSTOMER'S SOLE REMEDY FOR BREACH OF THAT WARRANTY SHALL BE REPAIR, REPLACEMENT, OR REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE PAID, AT POLYCOM'S OPTION. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE FOREGOING WARRANTIES AND REMEDIES ARE EXCLUSIVE AND ARE IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, TERMS, OR CONDITIONS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, EITHER IN FACT OR BY OPERATION OF LAW, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, INCLUDING WARRANTIES, TERMS, OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, CORRESPONDENCE WITH DESCRIPTION, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT, ALL OF WHICH ARE EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED. POLYCOM NEITHER ASSUMES NOR AUTHORIZES ANY OTHER PERSON TO ASSUME FOR IT ANY OTHER LIABILITY IN CONNECTION WITH THE SALE, INSTALLATION, MAINTENANCE OR USE OF ITS PRODUCTS.

SUPPORT & SERVICE AGREEMENTS. If you purchased your product from a Polycom Authorized Reseller, contact the Authorized Reseller for information about support and service agreements applicable to your product. For information on Polycom service, go to the Polycom web site www.polycom.com, products and services menu, or call 1-800-765-9266, outside the US call 1-408-526-9000, or your local Polycom Office, as listed on the Polycom Web site.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, POLYCOM EXCLUDES FOR ITSELF AND ITS SUPPLIERS ANY LIABILITY, WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), FOR INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES OF ANY KIND, OR FOR LOSS OF REVENUE OR PROFITS, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF INFORMATION OR DATA, OR OTHER FINANCIAL LOSS ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SALE, INSTALLATION, MAINTENANCE, USE, PERFORMANCE, FAILURE, OR INTERRUPTION OF ITS PRODUCTS, EVEN IF POLYCOM OR ITS AUTHORIZED RESELLER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, AND LIMITS ITS LIABILITY TO REPAIR, REPLACEMENT, OR REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE PAID, AT POLYCOM'S OPTION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES WILL NOT BE AFFECTED IF ANY REMEDY PROVIDED HEREIN SHALL FAIL OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

DISCLAIMER. Some countries, states, or provinces do not allow the exclusion or limitation of implied warranties or the limitation of incidental or consequential damages for certain products supplied to consumers, or the limitation of liability for personal injury, so the above limitations and exclusions may be limited in their application to you. When the implied warranties are not allowed to be excluded in their entirety, they will be limited to the duration of the applicable written warranty. This warranty gives you specific legal rights which may vary depending on local law.

GOVERNING LAW. This Limited Warranty and Limitation of Liability shall be governed by the laws of the State of California, U.S.A., and by the laws of the United States, excluding their conflicts of laws principles. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods is hereby excluded in its entirety from application to this Limited Warranty and Limitation of Liability.

Regulatory Notices

Warning

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

USA and Canadian Regulatory Notices

FCC Notice

Class A Digital Device or Peripheral

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

In accordance with Part 15 of the FCC rules, the user is cautioned that any changes or modifications not expressly approved by Polycom Inc. could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

The socket outlet to which this apparatus is connected must be installed near the equipment and must always be readily accessible.

Part 15 FCC Rules

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- 1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- 2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Part 68 FCC Rules

This equipment complies with part 68 of the FCC rules and the rules adopted by the ACTA. On the Network Interface Module of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format US:AAAEQ#TXXX. If requested, this number must be provided to the telephone company.

This equipment may not be used on a coin service or party line.

If you experience trouble with your Polycom HDX system, disconnect it from the telephone line to determine if the registered equipment is malfunctioning. For repair or warranty information, please contact Polycom Inc. at 1-888-248-4143 or 4750 Willow Road, Pleasanton, CA 94588-2708, USA. Contact information may also be found at <http://www.polycom.com>. If the system is causing harm to the network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect it until the problem is corrected.

If your Polycom HDX system causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. However, if advance notice is not practical, you will be notified as soon as possible. You will be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC if you believe it is necessary.

Your telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations, or procedures that could affect the operation of your equipment. If they do, you will be given advance notice so that you may make any changes necessary to maintain uninterrupted service.

The REN is useful to determine the quantity of devices that may be connected to the telephone line. Excessive RENs on the telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most, but not all areas, the sum of RENs of all devices that may be connected to a line, is determined by the total RENs, contact the local telephone company.

Regulatory Notices

FCC compliant telephone cords and modular plugs are provided with this equipment. This equipment is designed to be connected to the telephone network or premises' wiring using a compatible modular jack, which is Part 68 compliant. See installation instructions for details.

WHEN PROGRAMMING EMERGENCY NUMBERS AND/OR MAKING TEST CALLS TO EMERGENCY NUMBERS:

- 1) Remain on the line and briefly explain to the dispatcher the reason for the call.
- 2) Perform such activities in the off-peak hours, such as early morning or late evening.

Industry Canada (IC)

This Class [A] digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la Classe [A] est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

The Industry Canada label identifies certified equipment. This certification means that the equipment meets telecommunications network protective, operational and safety requirements as prescribed in the appropriate Terminal Equipment Technical Requirements document(s). The Department does not guarantee the equipment will operate to the user's satisfaction.

Before installing this equipment, users should ensure that it is permissible to be connected to the facilities of the local telecommunications company. The equipment must also be installed using an acceptable method of connection. The customer should be aware that compliance with the above conditions may not prevent degradation of service in some situations. Repairs to certified equipment should be coordinated by a representative designated by the supplier. Any repairs or alterations made by the user to this equipment, or equipment malfunctions, may give the telecommunications company cause to request the user to disconnect the equipment.

Users should ensure for their own protection that the electrical ground connections of the power utility, telephone lines and internal metallic water pipe system, if present, are connected together. This precaution may be particularly important in rural areas.

Caution: Users should not attempt to make such connections themselves, but should contact the appropriate electric inspection authority, or electrician, as appropriate.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) assigned to each relevant terminal device provides an indication of the maximum number of terminals allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The termination on an interface may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices does not exceed 5.

The REN of this equipment is either marked on the unit or included in the new style USA FCC registration number. In the case that the REN is included in the FCC number, the user should use the following key to determine the value:

The FCC number is formatted as US:AAAEQ#TXXX.

is the Ringer Equivalence Number without a decimal point (e.g. REN of 1.0 will be shown as 10, REN of 0.3 will be shown as 03). In the case of a Z ringer, ZZ shall appear. In the case of approved equipment without a network interface or equipment not to be connected to circuits with analog ringing supplied, NA shall appear.

Regulatory Notices

Mexico Regulatory Notices

Información del contacto para el importador de México

Polycom MÉXICO

Paseo de los Tamarindos

400-A 5to piso Suite: 21

Bosques de las Lomas

Cuajimalpa 05120 México, D.F.

Teléfono: +52-55-5091-4341

Fax: +52-55-5091-4472

Brazil Regulatory Notices

Este produto suporta apenas discagem DTMF (Tom).

Projetado para uso em escritório sempre conectado a um PABX.

EEA Regulatory Notices

CE Mark R & TTE Directive

This Polycom HDX system has been marked with the CE mark. This mark indicates compliance with EEC Directives 89/336/EEC, 73/23/EEC 1999/5/EC. A full copy of the Declaration of Conformity can be obtained from Polycom Ltd., 270 Bath Road, Slough UK SL1 4DX.

Declaration of Conformity:

Hereby, Polycom Ltd. declares that this Polycom HDX system is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Konformitetserklæring:

Hermed erklærer Polycom Ltd., at indestående Polycom HDX system er i overensstemmelse med de grundlæggende krav og de relevante punkter i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Konformitätserklärung:

Hiermit erklärt Polycom Ltd., dass der Polycom HDX system die grundlegenden Anforderungen und sonstige maßgebliche Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG erfüllt.

Δήλωση Συμμόρφωσης:

Δια του παρόντος, η εταιρεία Polycom Ltd. δηλώνει ότι η παρούσα συσκευή (δρομολογητής) VSX System; πληροί τις βασικές απαιτήσεις και άλλες βασικές προϋποθέσεις της Οδηγίας 1999/5/EK.

Vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutus:

Polycom Ltd. vakuuttaa täten, että Polycom HDX system on direktiivin 1999/5/EC keskeisten vaatimusten ja sen muiden tätä koskevien säännösten mukainen.

Déclaration de conformité:

Par la présente, Polycom Ltd. déclare que ce Polycom HDX system est conforme aux conditions essentielles et à toute autre modalité pertinente de la Directive 1999/5/CE.

Regulatory Notices

Dichiarazione di conformità:

Con la presente Polycom Ltd. dichiara che il Polycom HDX system soddisfa i requisiti essenziali e le altre disposizioni pertinenti della direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Verklaring van overeenstemming:

Hierbij verklaart Polycom Ltd. dat diens Polycom HDX system voldoet aan de basisvereisten en andere relevante voorwaarden van EG-richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Declaração de Conformidade:

Através da presente, a Polycom Ltd. declara que este Polycom HDX system se encontra em conformidade com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições relevantes da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Declaración de conformidad:

Por la presente declaración, Polycom Ltd. declara que este Polycom HDX system cumple los requisitos esenciales y otras cláusulas importantes de la directiva 1999/5/CE.

Överensstämmelseförklaring:

Polycom Ltd. förklarar härmed att denna Polycom HDX system överensstämmer med de väsentliga kraven och övriga relevanta stadganden i direktiv 1999/5/EG.

CE Mark LVD and EMC Directive

This Polycom HDX system has been marked with the CE mark. This mark indicates compliance with EEC Directives 89/336/EEC and 73/23/EEC. A full copy of the Declaration of Conformity can be obtained from Polycom Ltd., 270 Bath Road, Slough UK SL1 4DX, UK.

Mains Powered POTS Voice Telephony Without Emergency 000 Dialing

Warning: This equipment will be inoperable when mains power fails.

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会（VCCI）の基準に基づくクラスA情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用すると電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。

声 明

此为A级产品，在生活环境中，该产品可能会造成无线电干扰。在这种情况下，可能需要用户对其干扰采取切实可行的措施。

A급 기기 (업무용 정보통신기기)

이 기기는 업무용으로 전자파적합등록을 한 기기이오니 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 만약 잘못판매 또는 구입하였을 때에는 가정용으로 교환하시기 바랍니다.

Regulatory Notices

Underwriters Laboratories Statement

The system is intended to be powered only by the supplied power supply unit.

Special Safety Instructions

Follow existing safety instructions and observe all safeguards as directed.

Installation Instructions

Installation must be performed in accordance with all relevant national wiring rules.

故障の原因となりますので、システムの電源がオンになっているときは、マイク入力への機器の接続や取り外しをしないでください。

Plug Acts as Disconnect Device

The socket outlet to which this apparatus is connected must be installed near the equipment and must always be readily accessible.

Restriction of Hazardous Substances Directive (RoHS)

Polycom products are RoHS compliant, which means we have eliminated or brought to within acceptable limits: Lead, Mercury, Cadmium, Hexavalent Chromium, Polybrominated Biphenyls, and Polybrominated Diphenylethers.

End of Life Products

Polycom encourages you to recycle your end-of-life Polycom products in an environmentally considerate way.

In accordance with the requirements of the European Waste Electronic and Electrical Equipment (WEEE) Directive, all Polycom products are marked with the crossed wheelie bin symbol shown below. Products that carry this symbol should be not be disposed of in the household or general waste stream. Detail of the options open to you and the guidance on the requirements for the recycling and environmentally considerate disposal of your end of life Polycom products can be found at <http://www.polycom.com/WEEE>.

Battery Guidelines

Battery Usage

Observe battery polarity when you install or replace batteries in the remote control.

Replace batteries as a complete set, using new, quality batteries of the correct size and rating.

Do not short circuit batteries.

Batteries should be treated and used in accordance with the battery manufacturers guidance.

Battery Disposal



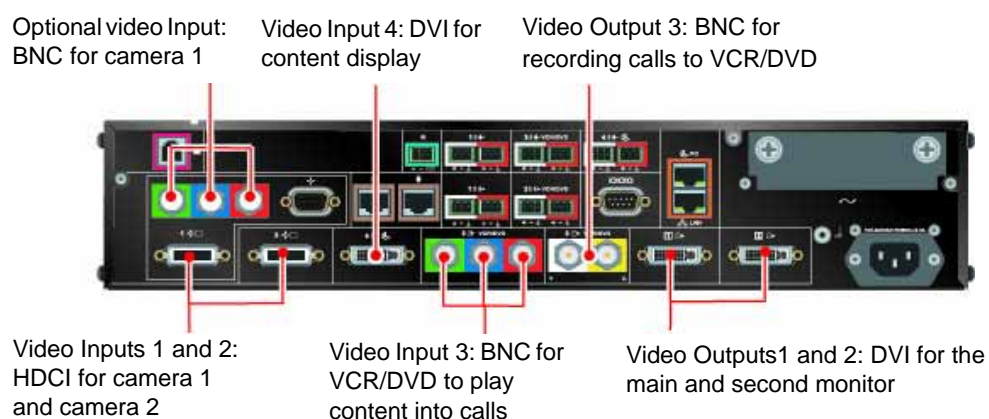
When the remote control batteries have reached the end of their working life, remove them and take them to a collection point where they can be recycled or disposed of in an environmentally friendly manner. Do not dispose of batteries in unsorted municipal waste.

Do not dispose of batteries in the fire. Detail on recycling and disposal of waste batteries can be found at <http://www.polycom.com/batteries>.

System Back Panel Views

Video Inputs and Outputs

Polycom HDX 9006



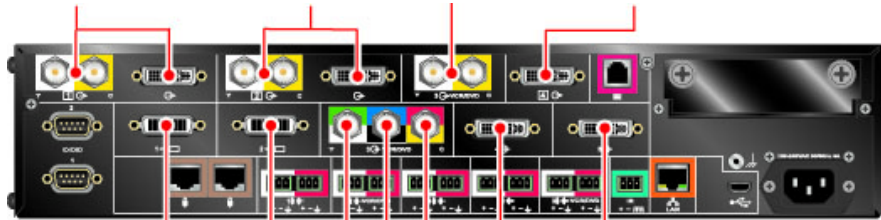
Polycom HDX 9004

Video Output 1:
BNC and DVI for
the main monitor

Video Output 2:
BNC and DVI for the
second monitor

Video Output 3: BNC
for recording calls to
VCR/DVD

Video Output 4: DVI
for content display



Video Inputs 1 and 2:
HDCI for camera 1
and camera 2

Video Input 3: BNC for
VCR/DVD to play
content into calls

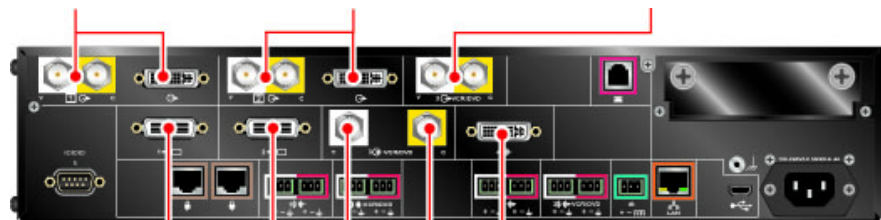
Video Inputs 4 and 5: DVI
for playing content from a
computer into calls

Polycom HDX 9001 and Polycom HDX 9002

Video Output 1: BNC and
DVI for the main monitor

Video Output 2: BNC and
DVI for the second monitor

Video Output 3: BNC for
recording calls to VCR/DVD

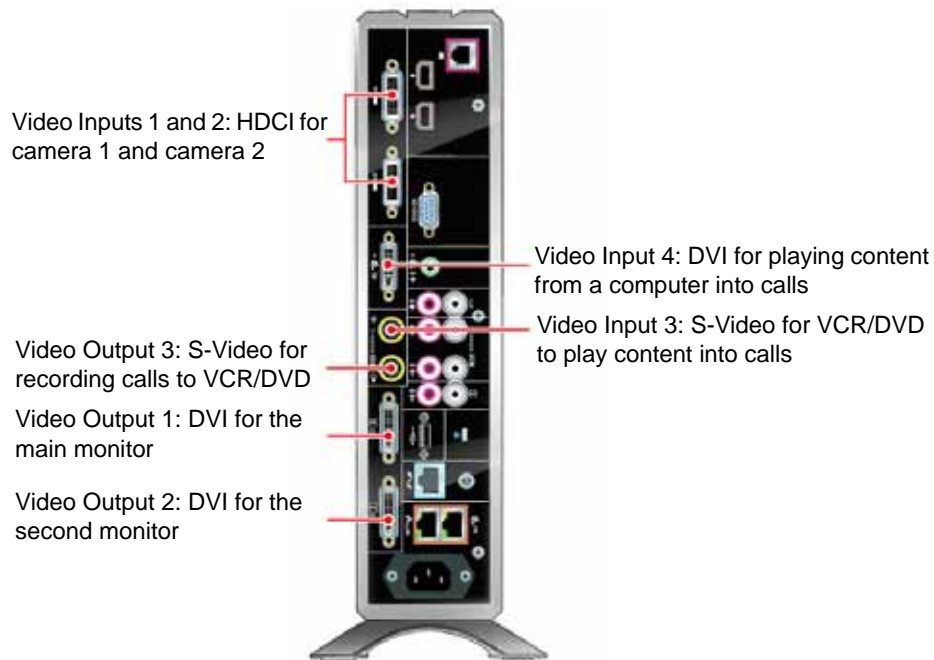


Video Inputs 1 and 2:
HDCI for camera 1
and camera 2

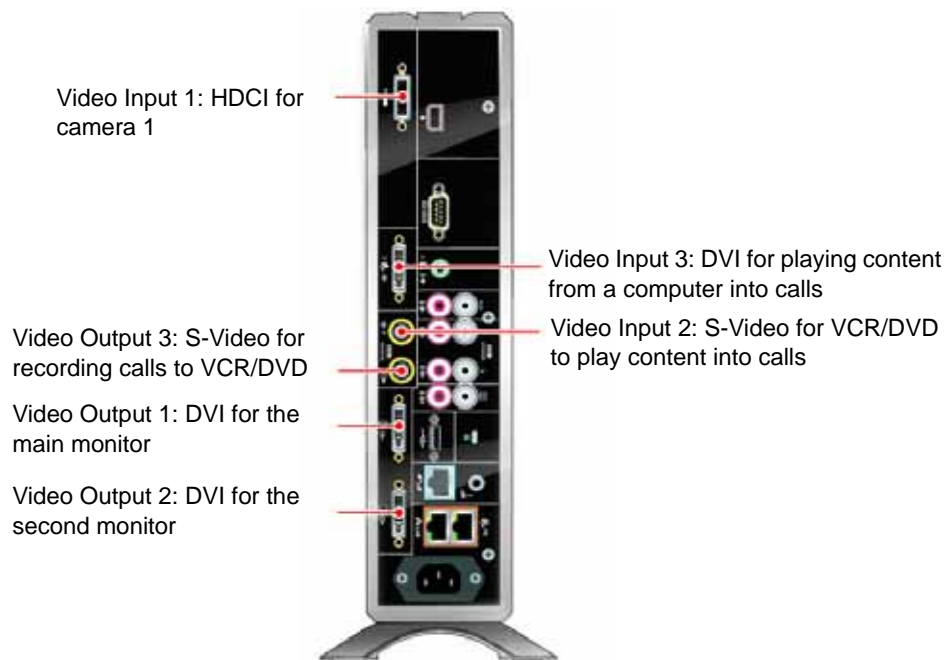
Video Input 3: BNC for
VCR/DVD to play content
into calls

Video Input 4: DVI for
playing content from a
computer into calls

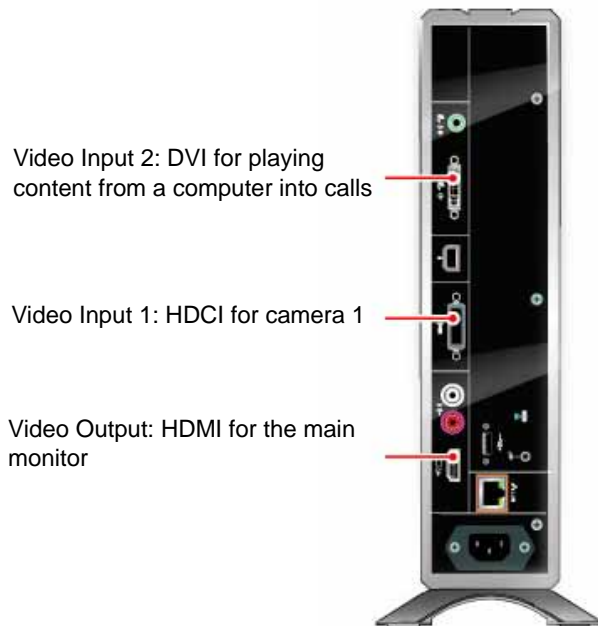
Polycom HDX 8000 Series System



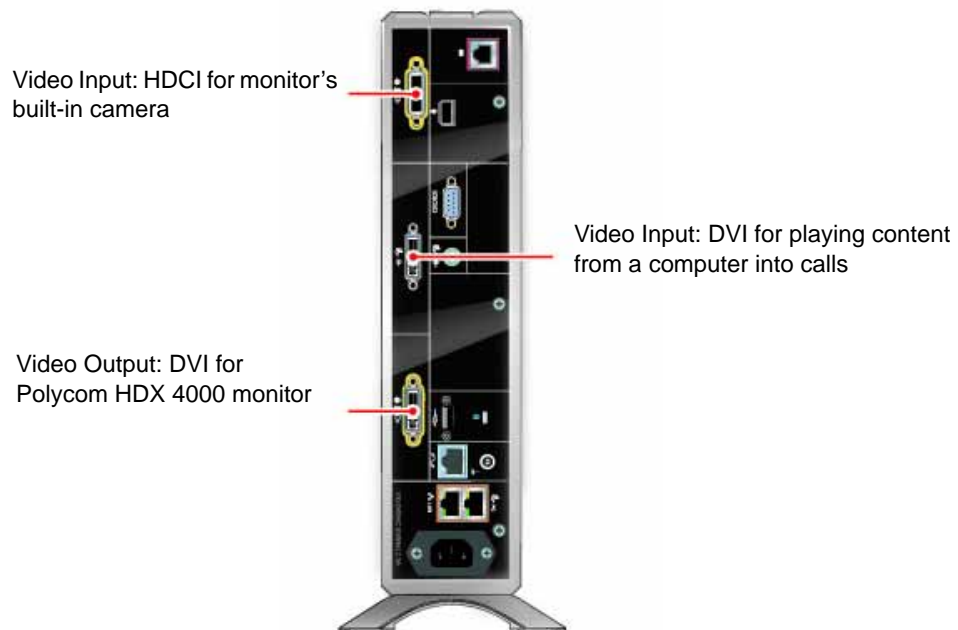
Polycom HDX 7000 Series System



Polycom HDX 6000 Series System

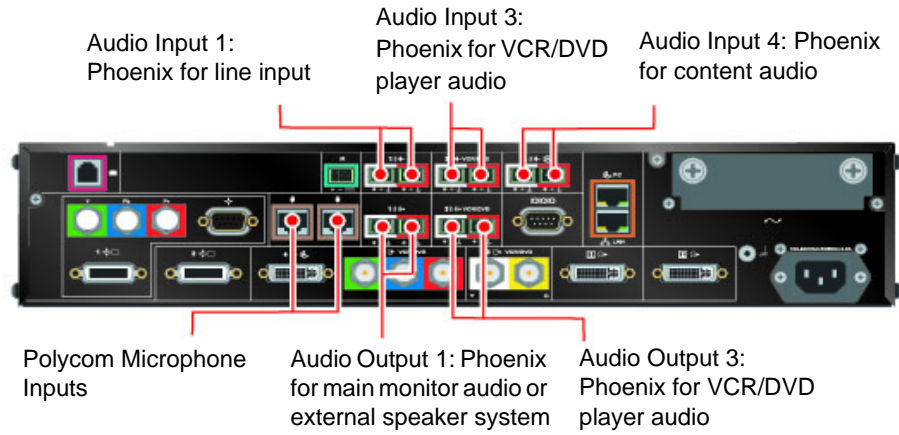


Polycom HDX 4000 Series System

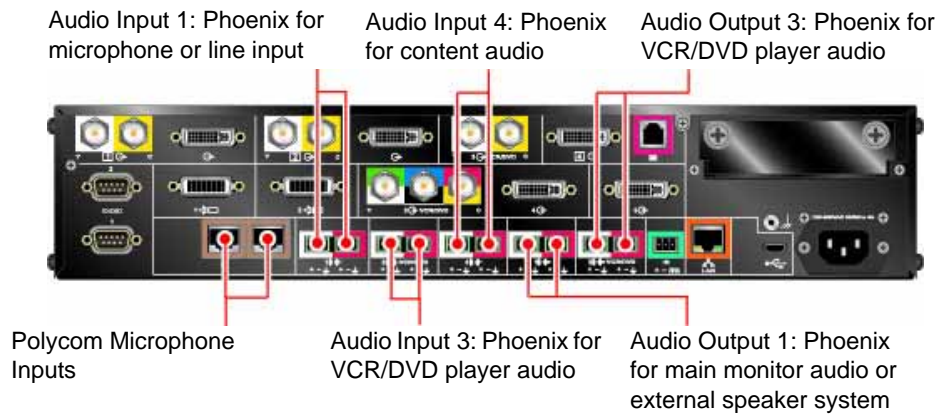


Audio Inputs and Outputs

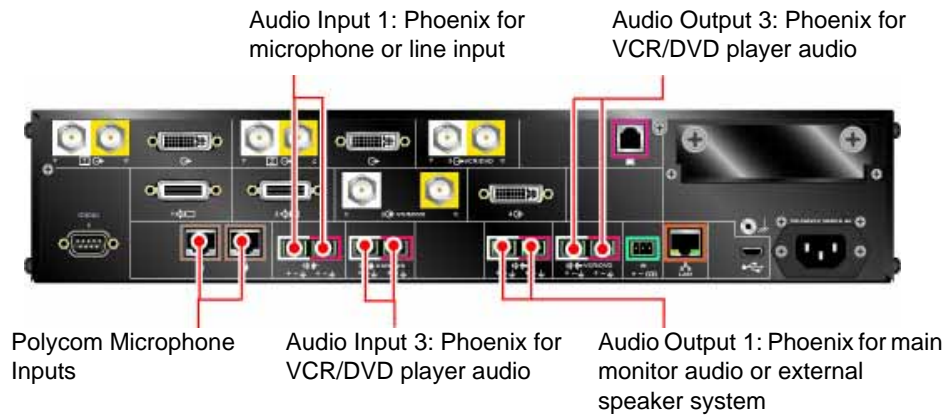
Polycom HDX 9006



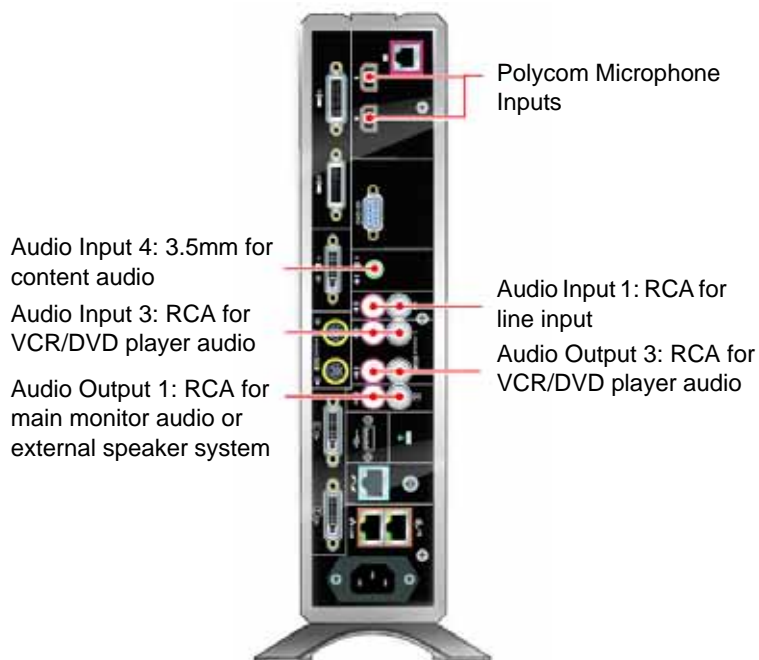
Polycom HDX 9004



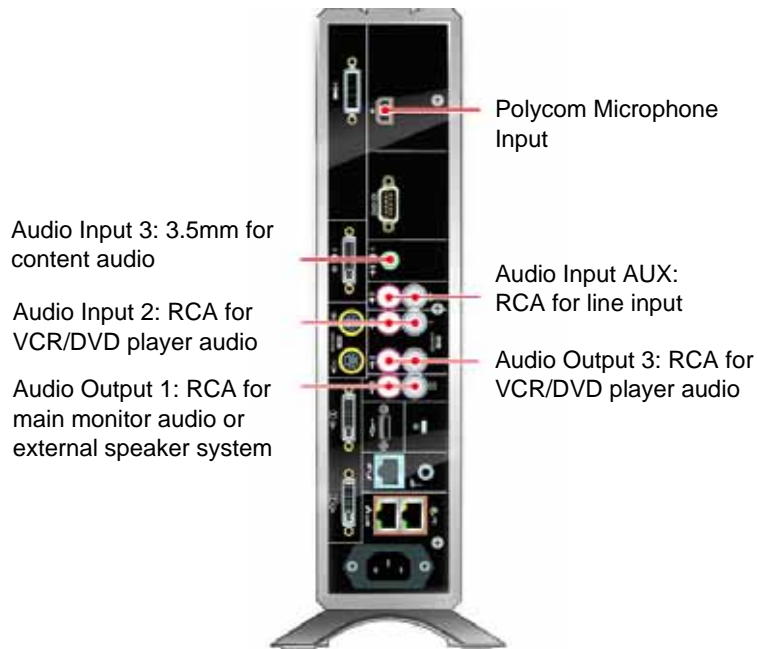
Polycom HDX 9001 and Polycom HDX 9002



Polycom HDX 8000 Series System



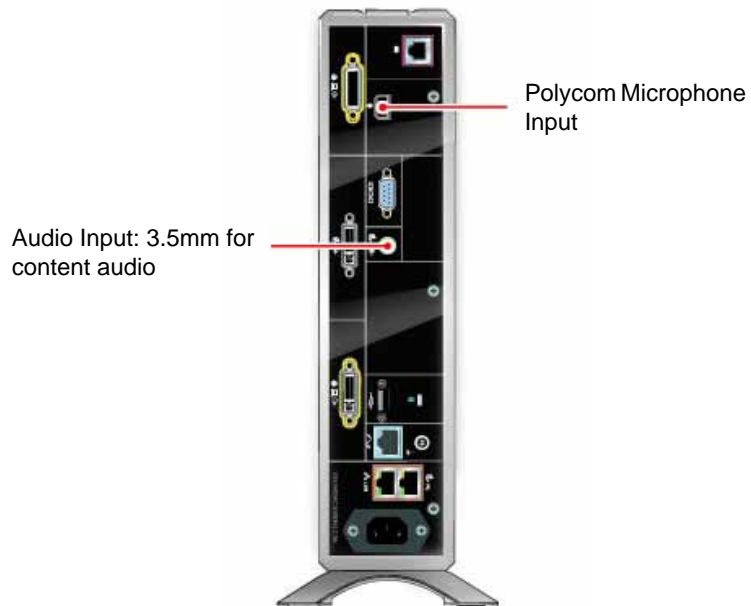
Polycom HDX 7000 Series System



Polycom HDX 6000 Series System

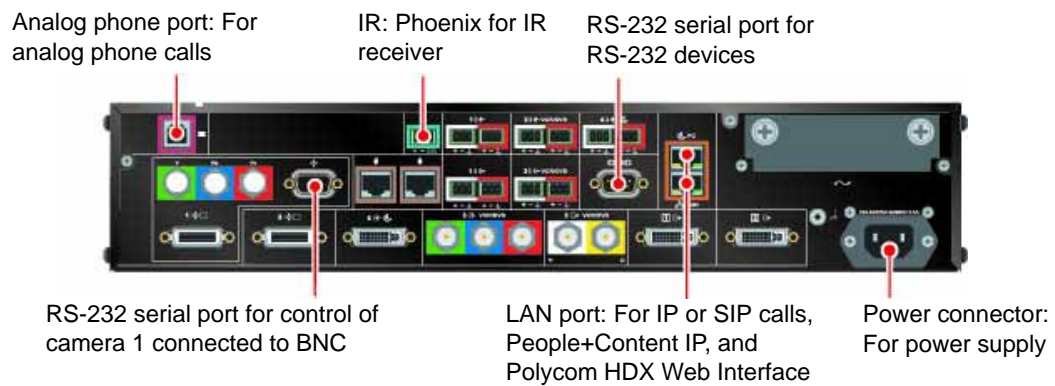


Polycom HDX 4000 Series System

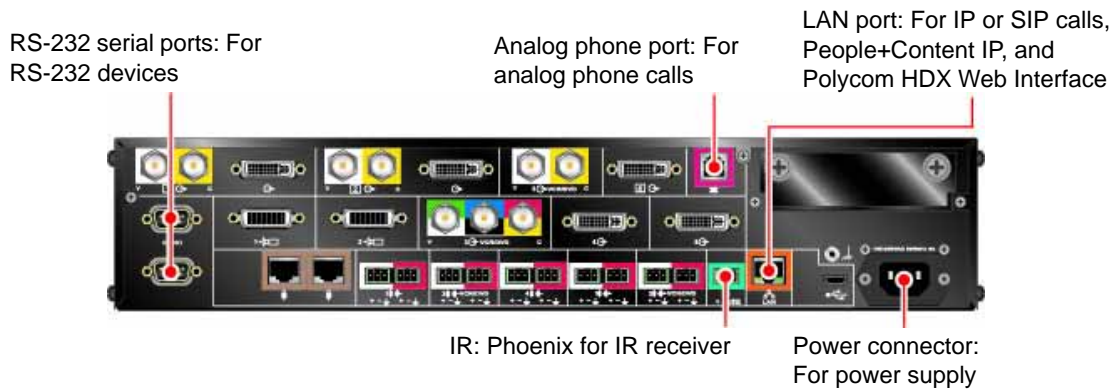


Network/Power/Control Inputs and Outputs

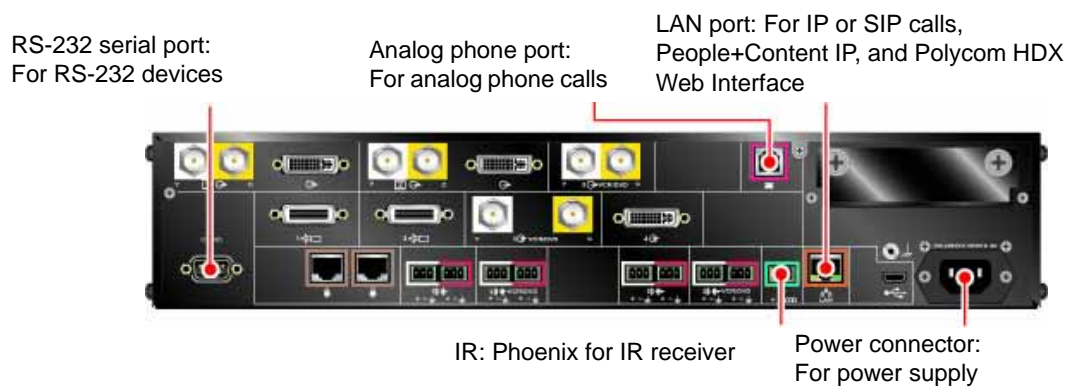
Polycom HDX 9006



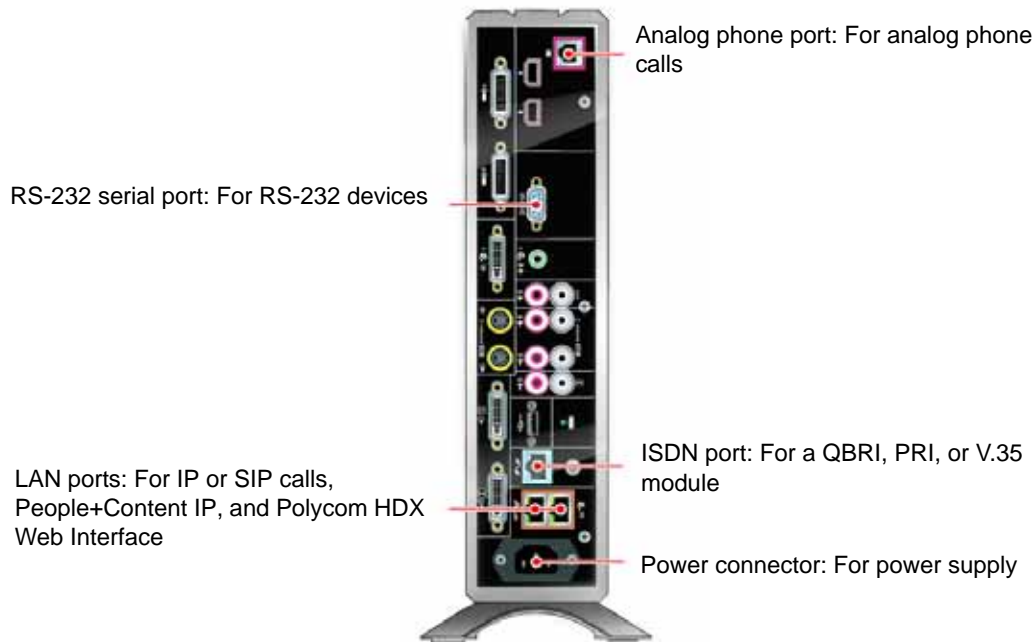
Polycom HDX 9004



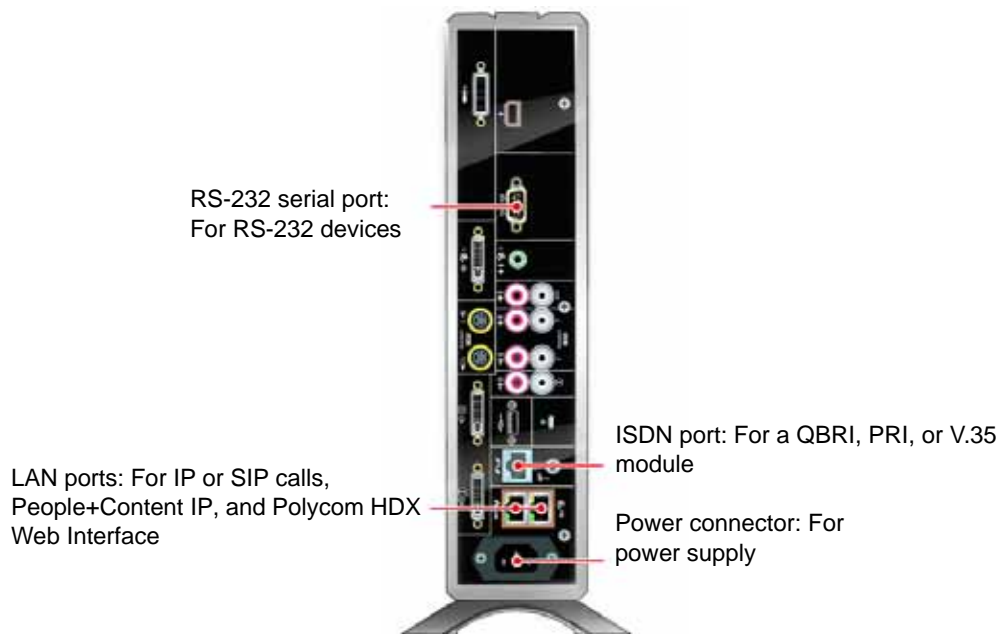
Polycom HDX 9001 and Polycom HDX 9002



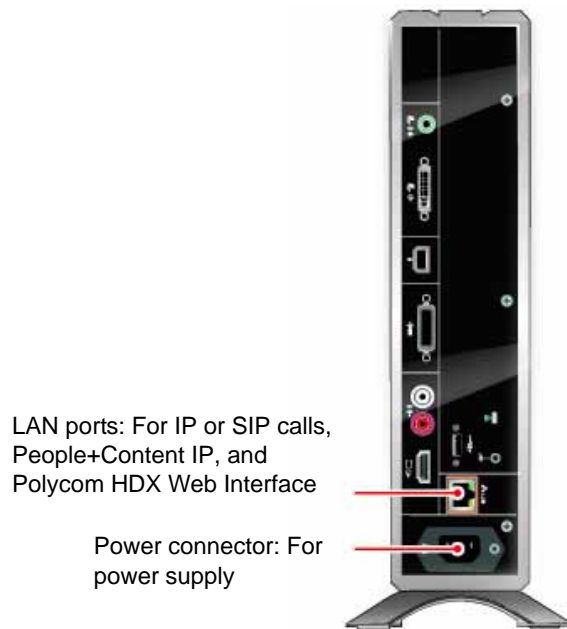
Polycom HDX 8000 Series System



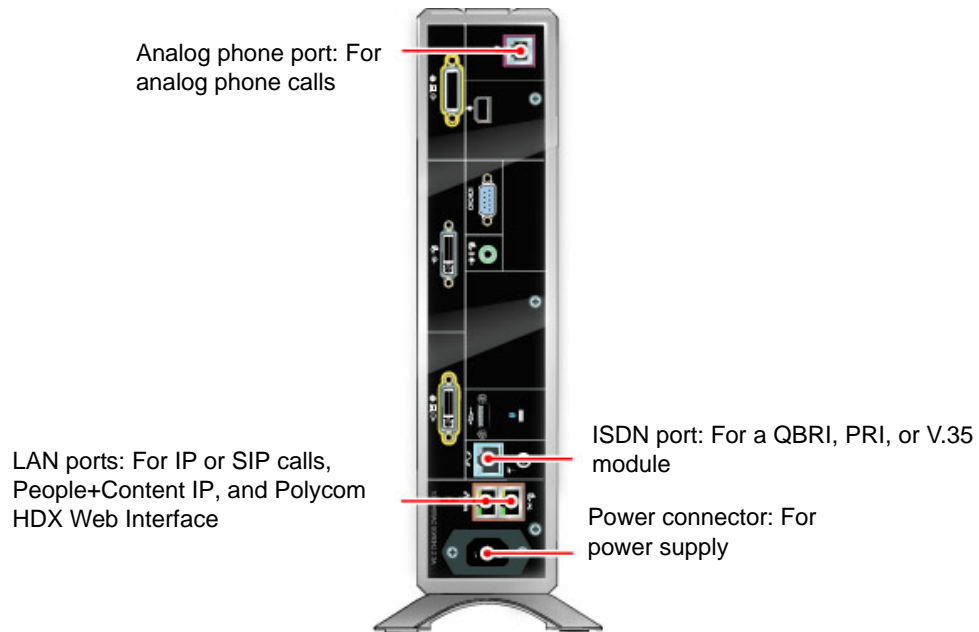
Polycom HDX 7000 Series System



Polycom HDX 6000 Series System



Polycom HDX 4000 Series System



Port Usage

You may need this information when you configure your network equipment for video conferencing.

The following table shows IP port usage.

Port	Function
23	(Telnet) For diagnostics
24	Polycom API
80	(HTTP) Pulling Polycom HDX system, Polycom VSX system, ViewStation®, and VS4000™ information (HTTP) Software upgrades and provisioning for iPower™ Static - TCP HTTP interface (optional)
123	UPD Network time protocol (NTP)
161-162	TCP/UDP SNMP
443	Static - TLS HTTPS interface (optional)
514	UDP syslog
1000-65535	Dynamic TCP H245. Can be set to "Fixed Ports" on Polycom systems. Dynamic UDP - RTP (video data). Can be set to "Fixed Ports" on Polycom systems. Dynamic UDP - RTP (audio data). Can be set to "Fixed Ports" on Polycom systems. Dynamic UDP - RTCP (control information). Can be set to "Fixed Ports" on Polycom systems.
1503-Static	TCP T.120
1718-Static	TCP Gatekeeper discovery (must be bidirectional)
1719-Static	TCP Gatekeeper RAS (must be bidirectional)
1720-Static	TCP H.323 call setup (must be bidirectional)
1731-Static	TCP Audio call control (must be bidirectional)

Port	Function
3601	TCP (Proprietary - data traffic) - Global directory data
5001	TCP/UDP People+Content IP
5060-Static	TCP/UDP SIP call setup (must be bidirectional)
5061-Static	TLS SIP call setup (must be bidirectional)
5222	XMPP Presence Service
8080-Static	TCP HTTP server push (optional)

Call Speeds and Resolutions

Point-to-Point Dialing Speeds

The following table shows the maximum allowable H.323/SIP point-to-point dialing speeds for each system.

System	Maximum Call Speed
Polycom HDX 9004	4 Mbps
Polycom HDX 9002 Polycom HDX 9001	4 Mbps
Polycom HDX 8000 series Hardware Version A	4 Mbps
Polycom HDX 9006 Polycom HDX 8000 series Hardware Version B	6 Mbps
Polycom HDX 7000 series	2 Mbps
Polycom HDX 6000 series	2 Mbps
Polycom HDX 4000 series	4 Mbps

Multipoint Dialing Speeds

The following table shows the maximum allowable H.323/SIP dialing speeds for the number of sites in a call, with Transcoding and AES Encryption disabled. Maximum speeds can be further limited by the communications equipment. Multipoint option keys are required for some of the capabilities shown in the table.

The first analog phone or Voice Over ISDN connection does not count toward the number of sites in a call. Additional analog phone or Voice Over ISDN connections, as well as all H.323 audio-only and SIP audio-only connections, do count toward the number of sites in a call.

Number of Sites in Call	Polycom HDX 9004 Max Speed for Each Site in kbps (8 Mbps)	Polycom HDX 9002 Max Speed for Each Site in kbps (4 Mbps)	Polycom HDX 9001 Polycom HDX 8000 series Polycom HDX 7000 series Polycom HDX 4000 series Max Speed for Each Site in kbps (4 Mbps)	Polycom HDX 9006 Polycom HDX 8000 series with Hardware Version B Max Speed for Each Site in kbps (6 Mbps)
3	3072	1920	1920	1920
4	1920	1344	1344	1344
5	1472	N/A	N/A	N/A
6	1024	N/A	N/A	N/A
7	1024	N/A	N/A	N/A
8	1024	N/A	N/A	N/A

The following table shows the maximum allowable PRI dialing speeds for the number of sites in a call.

Number of Sites in a Call	With T1 PRI Lines Max Speed for Each Site in kbps	With E1 PRI Lines Max Speed for Each Site in kbps
2	1472	1920
3	704	960
4	448	640
5	320	448
6	256	384
7	192	320
8	192	256

The following table shows the maximum allowable BRI dialing speeds for the number of sites in a call.

Number of Sites in a Call	With BRI Lines	
	Number of Lines	Max Speed for Each Site in kbps
2	2	256
2	3	384
2	4	512
3	2	128

Number of Sites in a Call	With BRI Lines	
	Number of Lines	Max Speed for Each Site in kbps
3	3	192
3	4	256
4	2	64
4	3	128
4	4	128
5	2	64
5	3	64
5	4	128
6	2	N/A
6	3	64
6	4	64
7	2	N/A
7	3	64
7	4	64
8	2	N/A
8	3	N/A
8	4	64

Call Speeds and Resolutions

The following illustrations show the resolution and frame rate sent in a call, depending on the speed of the call and the Video Quality setting on your system.

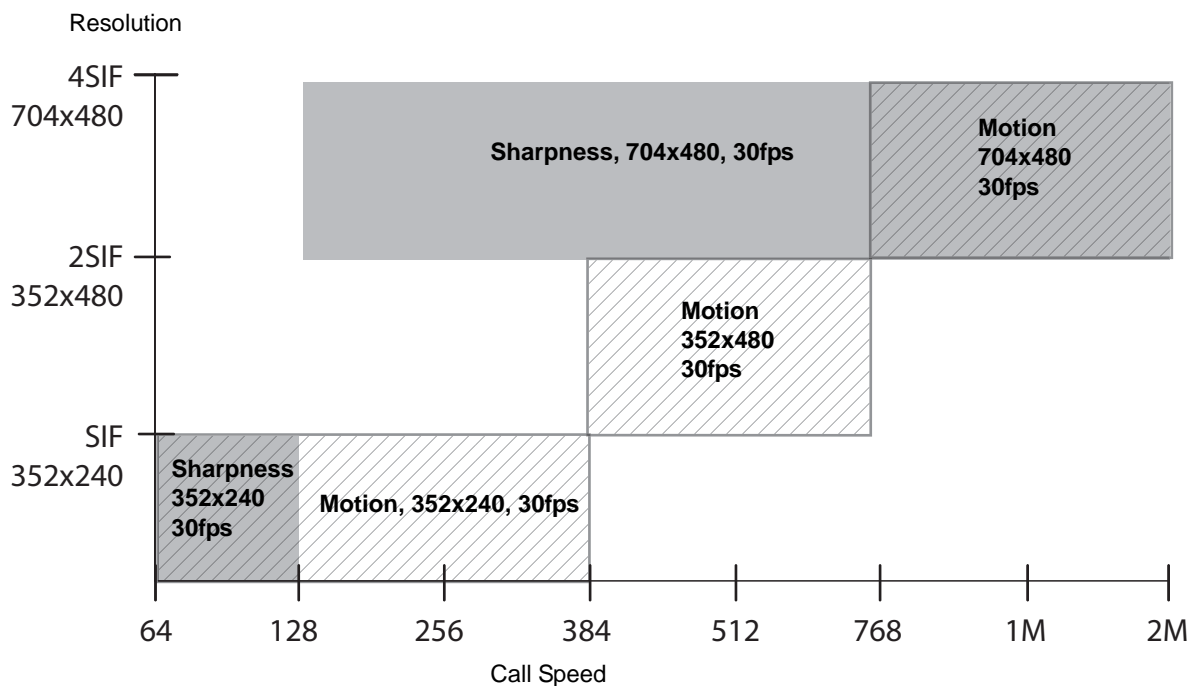


The numbers shown in this section are for NTSC values, but PAL values are similar—for example, 2SIF 352x480 for NTSC relates to 2CIF 352x576 for PAL.

SD Systems (NTSC)

The following illustration shows the resolutions for People video on these Polycom HDX systems (NTSC):

- Polycom HDX 9001
- Polycom HDX 7000
- Polycom HDX 4000

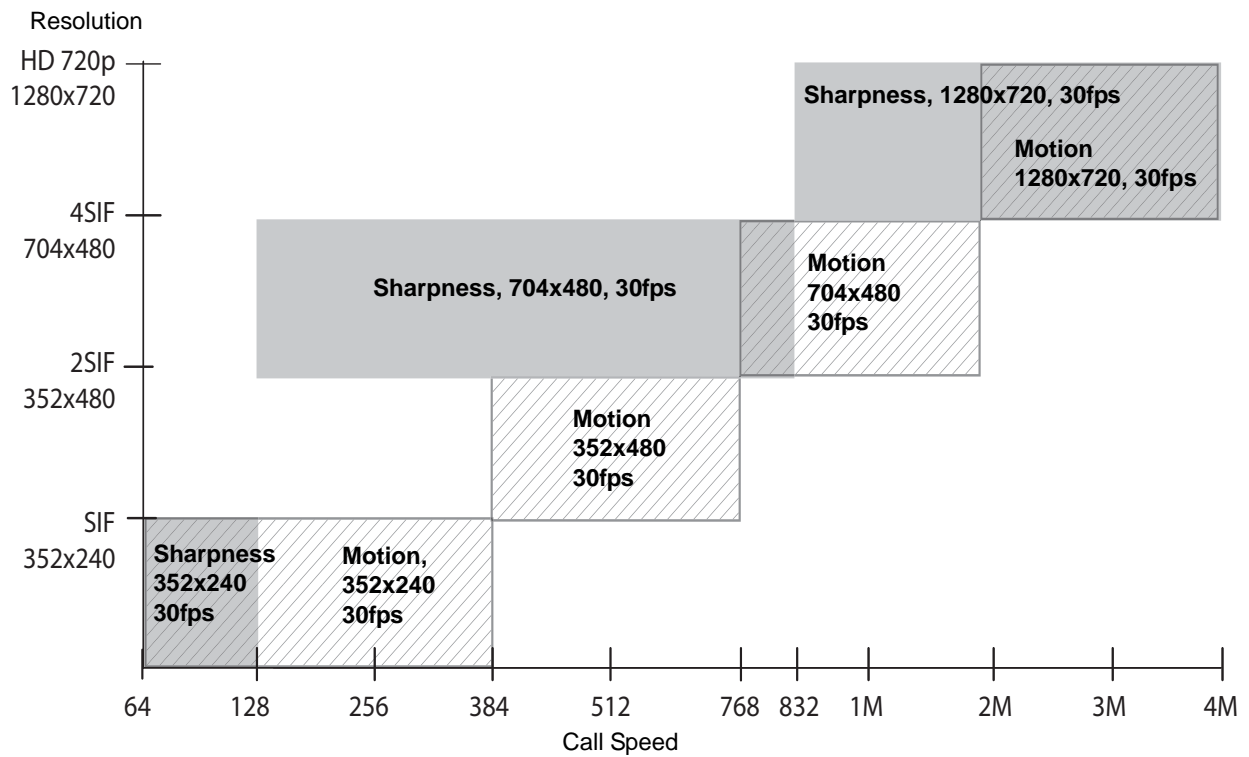


HD 720p Systems (NTSC)

The following illustration shows the resolutions for People video on these Polycom HDX systems (NTSC):

- Polycom HDX 9004
- Polycom HDX 9002
- Polycom HDX 8000 series with Hardware Version A
- Polycom HDX 7000 HD with Hardware Version A or B
- Polycom HDX 6000 HD
- Polycom HDX 4000 HD

This illustration does not cover scenarios that involve High Profile or the 1080p Resolution option.



HD 1080p Systems (NTSC)

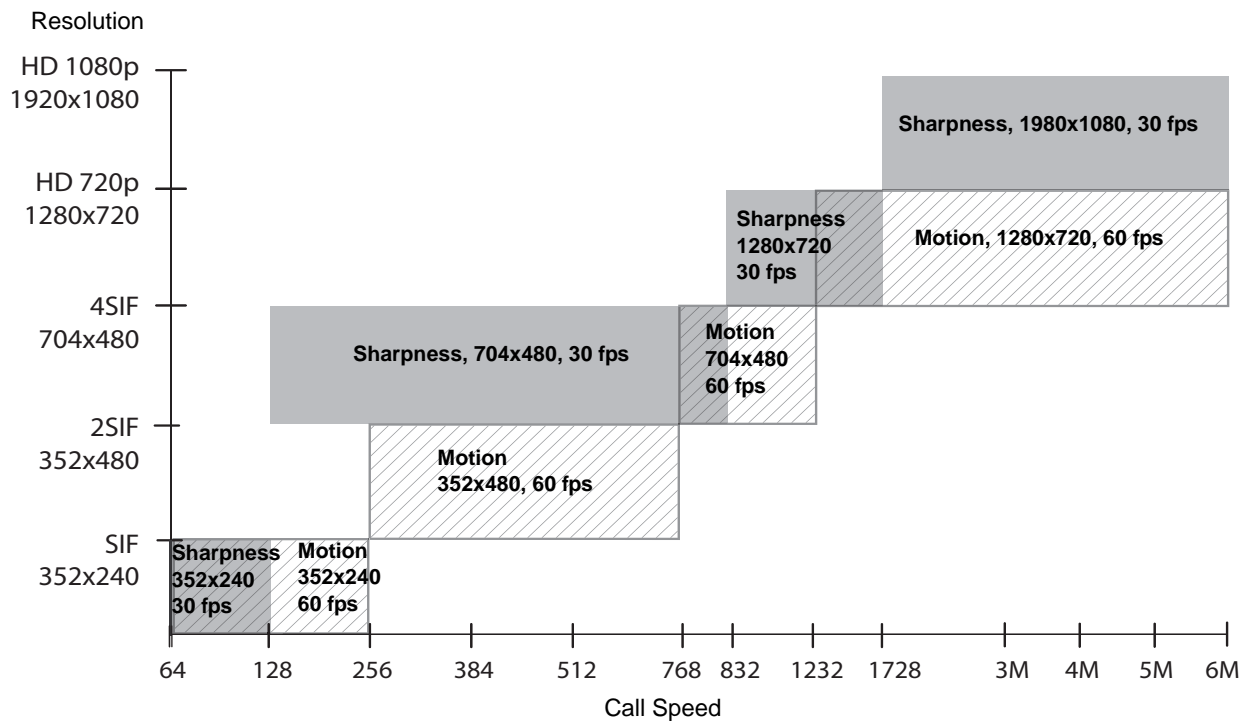
The following illustration shows the resolutions for People video on these Polycom HDX systems (NTSC):

Polycom HDX 9006

Polycom HDX 8000 series systems with Hardware Version B

Polycom HDX 7000 series systems with Hardware Version C

This illustration does not cover scenarios that involve High Profile.



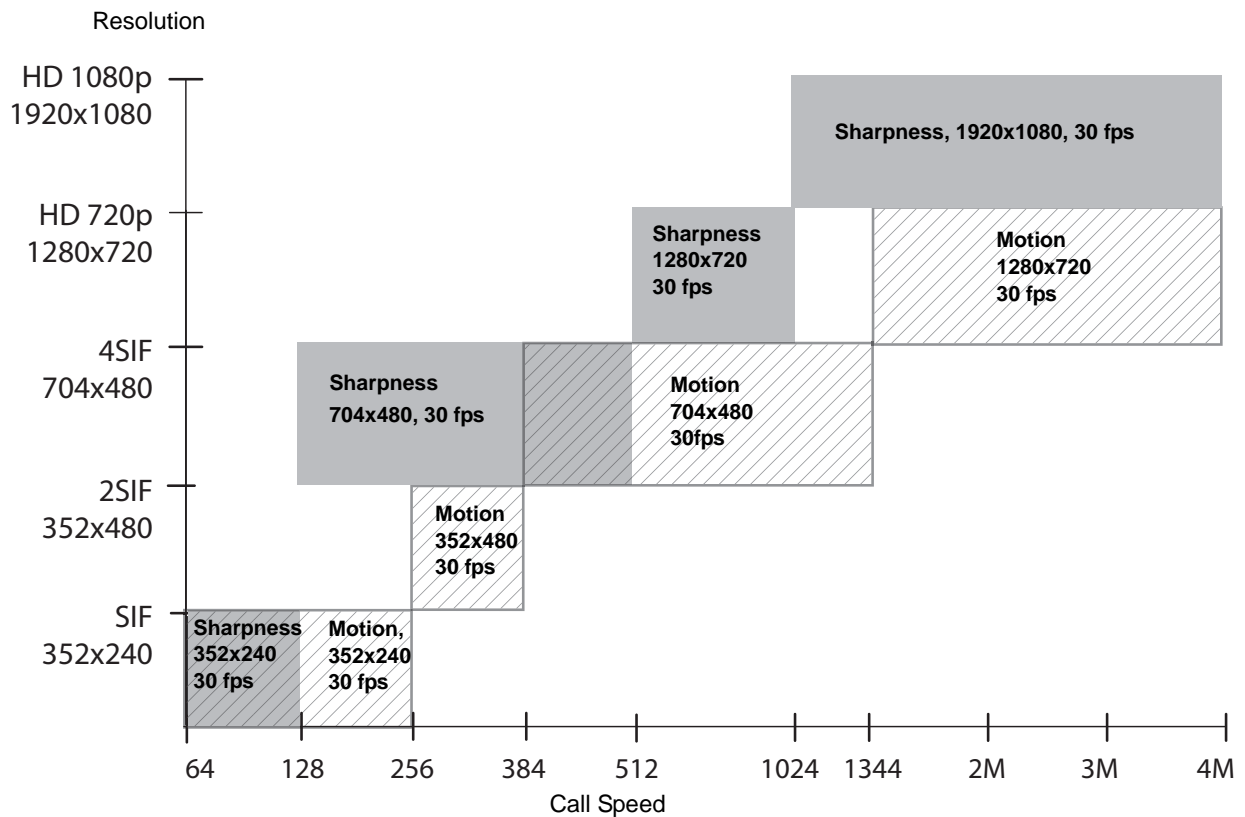
H.264 High Profile

H.264 High Profile video encoding and decoding provides improved resolution in point-to-point H.323 or SIP calls between the following systems:

- Polycom HDX 6000 HD
- Polycom HDX 7000 HD with Hardware Version C
- Polycom HDX 8000 HD with Hardware Version B
- Polycom HDX 9006

High Profile on Polycom HDX 6000 HD

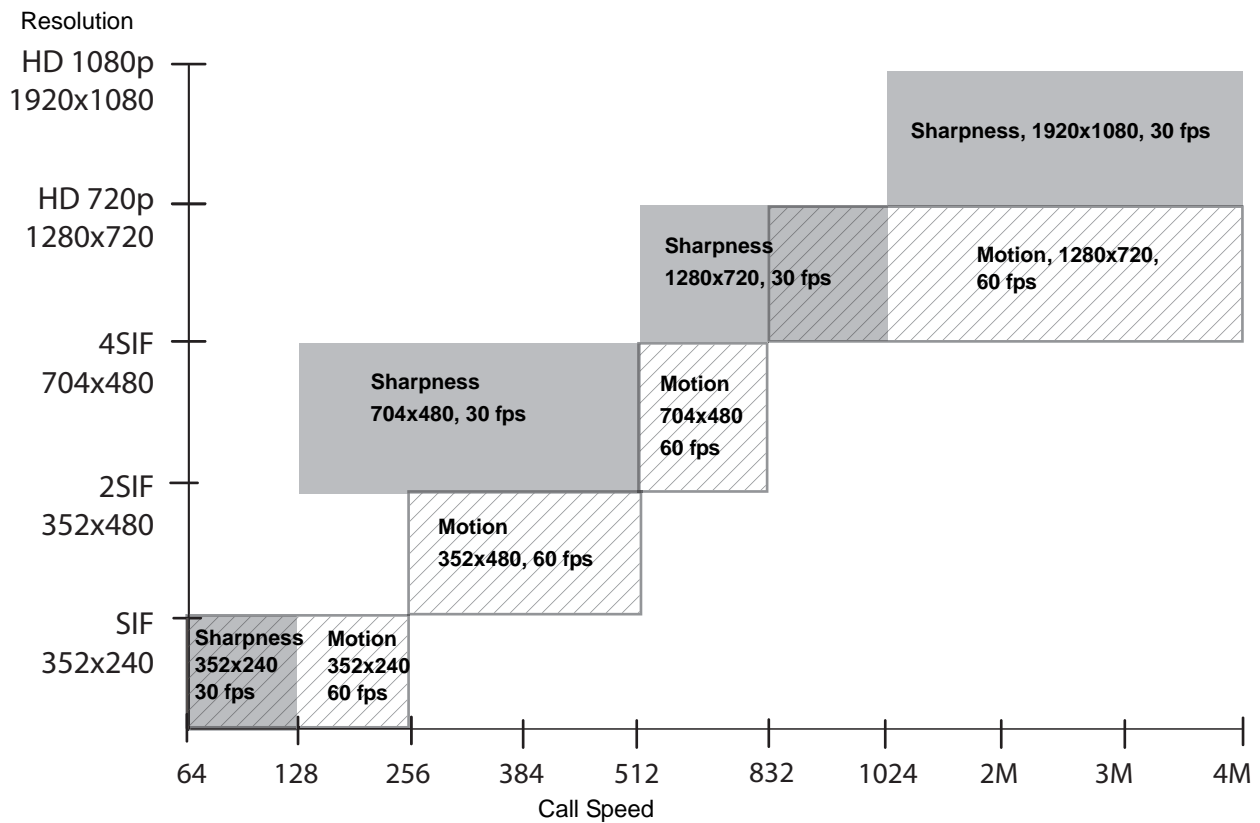
The following illustration shows the resolutions based on call speed for High Profile 1080p People video on Polycom HDX 6000 HD systems with the 1080p Resolution option key installed.



High Profile on Polycom HDX 7000 HD, Polycom HDX 8000 HD, and Polycom HDX 9006

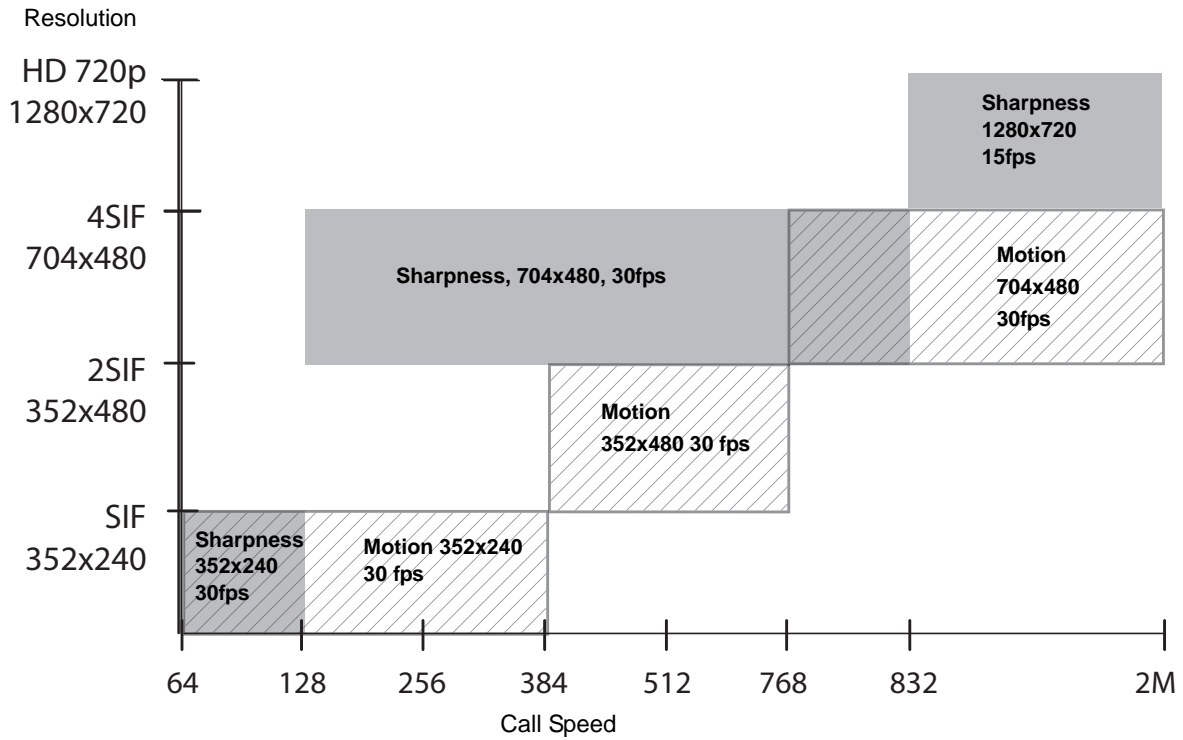
The following illustration shows the resolutions based on call speed for High Profile 1080p People video on these Polycom HDX systems (NTSC) with the 1080p Resolution option key installed:

- Polycom HDX 7000 HD with Hardware Version C
- Polycom HDX 8000 HD with Hardware Version B
- Polycom HDX 9006



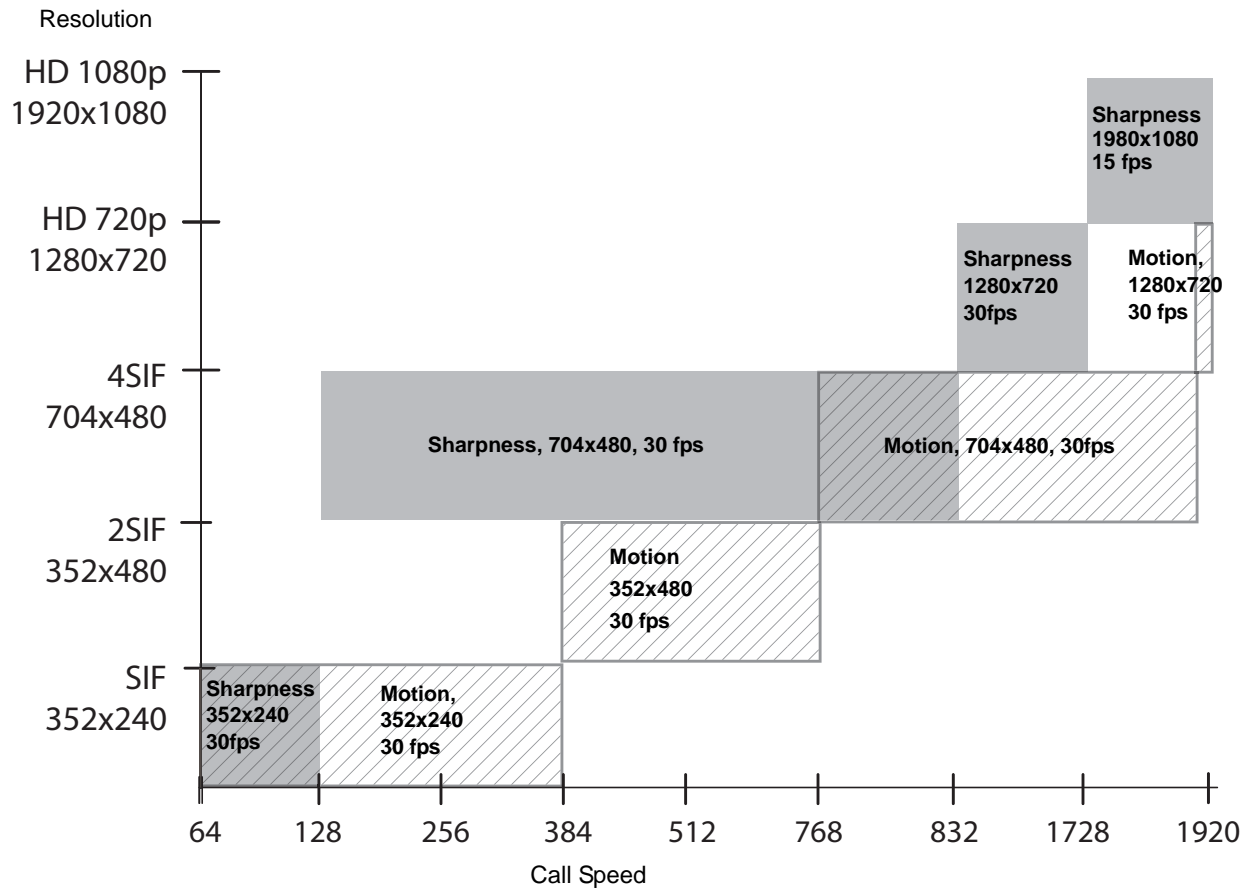
Maximum Resolution (720p) on Polycom HDX 7000 Systems

The following illustration shows the resolutions based on call speed for People video on Polycom HDX 7000 systems with **Maximum Resolution** enabled (NTSC).



Maximum Resolution (1080p) on Polycom HDX 6000 Systems

The following illustration shows the resolutions based on call speed for People video on Polycom HDX 6000 HD systems with the 1080p Resolution option key installed and **Maximum Resolution** enabled (NTSC).



D

Codes for Remote Control Recording Device Buttons

The following tables list codes for programming the Polycom remote control to control specific recording devices. For information about how to program these codes into the remote control, refer to [Configuring the Remote to Control a Recording Device](#) on page 10-3.

DVD Player Codes

Brand	Code(s)
Bush	1018, 1020, 1021, 1022, 1025, 1026, 1040
Changhong	1014
Daewoo	1031, 1043
Daewoo International	1043
Denon	1000
Dual	1017, 1025, 1026, 1033, 1040
Emerson	1012, 1019
GE	1088
Goldstar	1012, 1027
Grundig	1007, 1017, 1021, 1025, 1044, 1084, 1096
Hitachi	1010, 1021, 1083
Hyundai	1033, 1042
Integra	1014, 1042
JVC	1001, 1008, 1013, 1062, 1070, 1086, 1096

Brand	Code(s)
Kenwood	1000, 1005
LG	1012, 1027
Loewe	1090, 1096
Magnavox	1001, 1019, 1096
Marantz	1096
Mitsubishi	1002, 1025, 1081
Panasonic	1000, 1045, 1046
Philips	1001, 1019, 1089, 1090, 1091, 1092, 1093, 1094, 1096
Pioneer	1003, 1009, 1016, 1085
RCA	1009, 1088
Samsung	1000, 1010
Sanyo	1021
Schneider	1017, 1032, 1033, 1040, 1096
Shanghai	1018
Sharp	1015, 1028, 1069
Sony	1004, 1010, 1050, 1053, 1054
Tatung	1031
Teac	1009, 1027, 1030
Thomson	1007, 1080, 1088
Toshiba	1001, 1021, 1060, 1086
Yamaha	1000, 1006, 1089, 1096
Zenith	1001, 1012, 1027

DVD Recorder Codes

Brand	Code(s)
Hitachi	1083
JVC	1062, 1070
LG	1012, 1027

Brand	Code(s)
Mitsubishi	1081
Panasonic	1000, 1045, 1046
Philips	1089, 1091, 1092, 1093, 1094
Pioneer	1016, 1085
Samsung	1000, 1010
Sony	1050, 1053, 1054
Toshiba	1086
Zenith	1027

VCR Device Codes

Brand	Code(s)
Bush	1097, 1111, 1117, 1119, 1124
Changhong	1109, 1111
Daewoo	1106, 1107, 1112, 1124, 1136, 1140
Denon	1104
Dual	1097, 1103, 1111, 1119
Emerson	1097, 1100, 1101, 1105, 1106, 1113, 1116, 1140, 1153
Firstline	1101, 1105, 1106, 1119, 1136
GoldStar	1101, 1102, 1115, 1138
Grundig	1111, 1115, 1118, 1119, 1160
Hitachi	1097, 1101, 1103, 1104, 1107, 1111, 1116
Jensen	1103
JVC	1103, 1106, 1110, 1111, 1132, 1141
Kenwood	1102, 1103, 1110
LG	1101, 1102, 1104, 1106, 1136, 1138
Loewe	1101, 1111, 1114
Magnavox	1097, 1100, 1111, 1124, 1157, 1158
Marantz	1100, 1102, 1111

Brand	Code(s)
Mitsubishi	1097, 1103, 1105, 1109, 1110, 1111, 1124, 1129, 1150
NEC	1100, 1101, 1102, 1103, 1109, 1110, 1112, 1143
Panasonic	1100, 1114, 1115, 1161, 1121, 1134, 1139, 1146, 1133
Philips	1097, 1100, 1111, 1115, 1122, 1126, 1128
Pioneer	1104, 1110, 1111, 1114
Qisheng	1159
Quelle	1111
RCA	1097, 1100, 1104, 1109, 1115, 1116, 1118, 1129, 1133, 1159, 1162
Samaung	1106, 1116, 1120
Sanyo	1107, 1108, 1109, 1110, 1112, 1116, 1119, 1149
Schneider	1097, 1101, 1104, 1111, 1116, 1119, 1124
Sharp	1101, 1109, 1129, 1142
Shinco	1097
Sony	1097, 1098, 1099, 1100, 1123, 1137, 1147, 1148, 1151, 1152, 1155, 1164
Supra	1101, 1119
Tandy	1097, 1112
Tchibo	1119
Teac	1097, 1101, 1103, 1124
Telefunken	1103, 1118, 1124
Thomson	1103, 1110, 1118, 1125, 1156, 1159
Toshiba	1103, 1104, 1105, 1106, 1110, 1111, 1120, 1130, 1131, 1132, 1144, 1154, 1164
Yamaha	1102, 1103
Zenith	1097, 1099, 1136, 1153, 1158

PVR Device Codes

Brand	Code(s)
ABS	1164
Alienware	1164
CyberPower	1164
Dell	1164
DirectTV	1126
Gateway	1164
Hewlett Packard	1164
Howard Computers	1164
HP	1164
Hughes Network Systems	1126
Humax	1126
Hush	1164
iBUYPOWER	1164
JVC	1141
Linksys	1164
Media Center PC	1164
Microsoft	1164
Mind	1164
Niveus Media	1164
Northgate	1164
Panasonic	1121, 1139
Philips	1122, 1126, 1128
RCA	1162
Reel Multimedia	1163
ReplayTV	1161, 1121
Sonic Blue	1161, 1121
Sony	1123, 1151, 1152, 1155, 1164
Stack9	1164

Brand	Code(s)
Systemax	1164
Tagar Systems	1164
Thomson	1125, 1156
Tivo	1122, 1123, 1125, 1126, 1127, 1128, 1156
Toshiba	1130, 1132, 1164
Touch	1164
Viewsonic	1164
Voodoo	1164
ZTGroup	1164

Index

Numerics

802.1 2-6

A

access

allowing 7-5, 8-4, 8-5, 8-12

levels 7-3, 8-12

limiting 1-10, 6-6, 7-3, 8-2, 8-4, 8-12

remote 1-11, 8-4

Account Lock Duration in Minutes (setting) 8-11

account lockout 8-11

account number

recorded in CDR 9-5

requiring 9-5

validating 9-5

Account Validation (screen) 9-5

Active Directory 6-9, 6-14

adapter, null modem 5-7

address

SIP 2-12, 2-14

Address Displayed in Global Directory (setting)
2-18

addresses

directory, displaying 2-18

displaying 7-5

gatekeeper 2-8

Global Directory Server 6-10

IP 2-3

NAT public (WAN) 2-18

SIP proxy server 2-13, 2-15

SIP registrar server 2-13, 2-15

Admin Account screen 8-11

Admin ID (setting) 8-2

Admin Settings 1-11

AES encryption

enabling 8-7

See also encryption

AES Encryption (setting) 8-4, 8-7

alert tones 4-14

alerts 11-2

Allow Access to User Settings (setting) 8-5, 8-12

Allow Directory Changes (setting) 6-6

Allow Mixed IP and ISDN Calls (setting) 6-2

Allow Video Display on Web (setting) 8-4, 9-2

Alternate Gatekeepers (setting) 2-8

Always Dial Area Code (setting) 7-1

analog phone

configuring 2-30

number 2-30

Analog Phone (setting) 2-31

analog phone, connecting 2-29

Answer on DSR (setting) 2-28

answering calls automatically 6-2, 6-3

Area Code (setting) 2-10, 2-24, 2-25, 2-27, 7-1

aspect ratio

monitor 1 3-3

monitor 2 3-5, 3-6, 3-7

audio

autorotation 4-19

balanced, configuring 4-16

configuring equipment type 4-16

data rate (call statistics) 11-3

guidelines for using Polycom microphones 4-3

meter test 11-5

meters 4-17, 4-18, 4-19, 4-20, 4-21

output mix 4-11

protocol (call statistics) 11-3

sound effects volume 4-14

stereo setting 4-19

StereoSurround 4-19

VCR/DVD settings 5-2

volume 4-18

Audio Input (screen) 4-15

audio input formats 4-1, 4-2

audio inputs A-5

Audio Levels (screen) 4-18

audio mixer

connecting 4-9

Audio Output (screen) 4-17

audio output formats 4-11

audio outputs A-5
 Audio Priority (setting) 2-6
 Audio Protocol (setting), for broadcasting 2-29
 Audio Settings (screen) 4-14
 Authentication PIN (setting) 2-8
 Authentication Type (setting) 6-11
 Auto Adjust for Daylight Saving Time (setting) 7-1
 Auto Answer Multipoint Video (setting) 6-2
 Auto Answer Point-to-Point Video (setting) 6-2
 Auto BRI Configuration (setting) 2-23
 Auto Duplex Mode 2-5
 Auto LAN Speed 2-5
 Auto mode (multipoint display) 3-10
 Auto NAT Configuration 2-18
 Auto Preferred Dialing Method 2-33
 auto-answer, muting 4-14
 automatic provisioning 9-9
 automatic restart, actions that cause 2-3, 2-5, 8-4, 8-5
 automatically detect SPIDs 2-24
 Autorotation (setting) 4-19
 Availability Control (setting) 7-5
 Avaya network integration 2-9

B

back panel views A-1, A-5
 Background Content Source (setting) 5-6
 Backlight Compensation (setting) 3-21
 balanced audio, configuring 4-16
 bandwidth
 allowing users to specify 7-5
 dynamic 2-17, 3-22
 managing 2-11, 2-17, 2-34
 specifying 2-17
 specifying allocations for People and Content 3-22
 Bandwidth (screen) 2-17
 bandwidth, *See also* call speed
 bandwidth, *See* call speed
 Base DN (Distinguished Name) 6-11
 basic mode 12-2
 Basic Mode (setting) 2-31, 12-2
 bass adjustment 4-18
 Baud Rate (setting) 10-5
 black level, setting for Polycom EagleEye 3-23
 Bonding (setting) 2-25
 BRI network interface

channels to dial in parallel 2-23
 configuring 2-23, 2-24
 connecting to systems 2-20
 enabling/disabling lines 2-24
 hardware requirements 2-20
 lights 2-21, 2-22
 specifying B1 and B2 channel numbers 2-24
 voice algorithm 2-23
 brightness, setting for Polycom EagleEye 3-23
 broadcast mode
 configuring 2-29
 enabling 2-29
 browser, configuring to use Polycom HDX web interface 9-2
 Built-In Microphones (dB meter) 4-17
 burn-in preventing on monitors 3-11
 burn-in, preventing on monitors 3-12

C

cable connections A-1, A-5
 cables, microphone 4-4, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7
 Calendar button 6-17, 7-4
 calendaring service 6-16
 Call Detail Report (CDR)
 account numbers 9-5
 archives 11-10
 description 11-7
 information provided 11-7
 Call Detail Report (screen) 11-7, 11-10
 Call Detail Report (setting) 6-2
 Call Preference (screen) 2-31
 Call Preference (setting) 2-33
 Call Quality (setting) 2-34, 7-5
 Call Settings (screen) 6-1
 call speed
 allowing users to specify 7-5
 call statistics 11-3
 serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530 2-27
 setting gateway prefixes/suffixes 2-11
 setting preferences 2-34
 call speed, *See also* bandwidth
 Call Speeds (screen) 2-34
 Call Statistics (screen) 11-3
 Call Status (screen) 11-3
 Call Summary (screen) 11-3
 call type
 allowing users to specify 7-5
 listed in call statistics 11-3
 Call-by-Call (setting) 2-26
 Calling Profile (setting) 2-27

- calls
 - analog voice-only, enabling 2-31
 - answer mode 6-3
 - auto-answer 6-2, 6-3
 - auto-answer, muting 4-14
 - basic troubleshooting 12-1
 - cascaded 6-5
 - elapsed time, displaying 7-2
 - gateway 2-35
 - history, *See* Call Detail Report (CDR)
 - ISDN voice-only, enabling 2-32
 - mixed, allowing 6-2
 - preferences, configuring 2-31
 - recent 11-6
 - refusing 7-5
 - refusing, *See* Do Not Disturb
 - test 12-1
 - time, maximum 6-2
 - tracking 9-5
 - type 7-5, 11-3
- Camera 1 (setting) 3-17
- Camera 2 (setting) 3-18
- Camera 3 (setting) 3-19
- Camera 4 (setting) 3-20
- Camera 5 (setting) 3-21
- Camera Control (setting) 10-5
- Camera Pan Direction (setting) 3-22
- camera presets
 - deleting 3-25
 - setting 3-25
- Camera PTZ (setting) 10-5
- cameras
 - backlight compensation 3-21
 - configuring 3-17-3-25
 - connecting 3-13, 3-14, 3-15, 3-16
 - control, configuring 10-5
 - customizing icons 3-17, 3-18, 3-19, 3-20, 3-21, 7-7
 - customizing names 3-17, 3-18, 3-19, 3-20, 3-21, 7-7
 - direction of movement, specifying 3-22
 - far control of near camera 3-21
 - input formats 3-14, 3-15, 3-16
 - positioning 1-4, 1-5
 - primary, specifying 3-21
 - restoring EagleEye settings 3-23
 - setting presets 3-25
 - white balance setting for EagleEye 3-24
- Cameras (screen) 3-17
- Can Contain or Reverse User ID (setting) 8-9
- cascaded calls
 - placing 6-5
 - restrictions 6-5
- Channel ID (setting) 10-2
- channels to dial in parallel 2-23, 2-26
- Clock Source (read-only setting) 2-26
- closed captions
 - configuring RS-232 serial port 5-8
 - configuring the modem 5-7
 - configuring to receive 10-5
 - providing audio to the captioner 5-6
 - providing by modem 5-7
 - providing using Polycom HDX web interface 5-9
 - providing using the web interface 5-8, 5-9
 - providing with equipment connected locally 5-8
 - RS-232 serial port configuration 5-7
 - ways to provide 5-6
- codes for programming remote control D-1
- color balance adjustment 3-12
- color bar test 3-12, 11-4
- color saturation, setting for Polycom EagleEye 3-23
- computers
 - connecting to system 5-3
 - sharing content by connecting to system 5-3
- Conference On Demand 2-9
 - configuring systems to use 6-4
 - multipoint calls 2-8
 - restrictions 6-4
- configuring
 - admin settings 1-11
 - audio
 - for content 5-2
 - for recording calls 5-2
 - balanced audio inputs 4-16
 - BRI 2-23, 2-24
 - call preferences 2-31
 - call settings 6-1
 - camera control 10-5
 - cameras 3-17-3-25
 - content display 5-3
 - directory settings 6-6
 - dual monitor emulation 3-4
 - firewalls 2-18
 - for analog phone 2-30
 - for closed captions 10-5
 - for PathNavigator 6-4
 - for VPN 2-18
 - IP network 2-7-2-18
 - LAN properties 2-3
 - microphones
 - Polycom 4-14

- modem
 - to receive closed captions 5-7
- monitor settings 3-3
- monitors
 - color, sharpness, brightness 3-12
 - for dual monitor emulation 3-9
- multipoint calls 3-10
- NAT 2-18
- network, using the setup wizard 1-11
- PIP 3-4
- PRI 2-25, 2-26
- remote control 10-1
- RS-232 serial port 10-5
- serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530 2-28, 2-29
- signal polarity, serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530 2-28
- SIP 2-12, 2-13
- SNMP 9-7
- StereoSurround 4-19
- to use a gatekeeper 2-8
- to use a gateway 2-11
- to use Global Directory 6-10, 6-11
- touch-panel control 10-5
- VCR/DVD 5-2
- video to be recorded 3-7
- Vortex mixer 4-20, 10-5
- Confirm Directory Additions Upon Call
 - Disconnect (setting) 6-6
- Confirm Directory Deletions (setting) 6-6
- Connect to my LAN (setting) 8-5
- connectors A-1, A-5
 - audio input 4-1, 4-2
 - audio output 4-11
 - video
 - inputs 3-14, 3-15, 3-16
 - outputs 3-1, 3-2
- Console IP Address (setting) 9-7
- Contact Name (setting) 9-7
- content
 - display, configuring 3-4, 5-3
- Content Input (dB meter) 4-17
- Content Input Level (setting) 4-16
- Content Video Adjustment (setting) 3-8
- Content video source 3-18, 3-19, 3-20, 3-21
- continuous presence 3-11, 3-27
- control panel 10-4
- Control Priority (setting) 2-6
- Country (setting) 7-1
- Country Code (setting) 2-10
- Crypto Resync (setting) 2-28
- cryptographic equipment, configuring to use 2-28
- CSU (channel service unit) 2-25
- CTS signal polarity 2-28
- Current Percent Filled (setting) 8-14
- D**
- D Channel Location (read-only setting) 2-26
- Data Bits (setting) 10-5
- data collaboration, *See* sharing content
- date and time
 - displaying 7-5
 - setting 7-1
- Date and Time (screen) 7-2
- Date Format (setting) 7-2
- daylight saving time adjustment 7-1
- DCD signal polarity 2-28
- Default Gateway (IPv4) (setting) 2-3
- Default Gateway (IPv6) (setting) 2-4
- Delayed DCD Hangup (setting) 2-28
- Detect Camera (setting) 3-17, 3-18, 3-19, 3-20, 3-21, 10-5
- Detect Cameras (setting) 3-22
- diagnostic screens 11-1
- diagnostics
 - system log 11-11
- Dial 1+ for all USA Calls 7-1
- dialing
 - last number dialed 7-5
 - order 2-33
 - preferred method 2-33
 - RS-366 2-27
- Dialing Order (setting) 2-35
- dialing prefix
 - ISDN or analog, for outside line 2-30
 - ISDN, for international calls 2-26
 - ISDN, for outside line 2-23, 2-25
 - serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530, for outside line 2-27
- DiffServ 2-16
- Direct Inward Dial (setting) 2-11
- directory
 - allowing changes 6-6
 - button 7-4
 - confirm changes 6-6
 - creating localized entry names 6-8
 - downloading to a computer 6-7
 - groups 6-12, 6-13
 - localized entries 6-8

- managing with Polycom HDX web interface
 - 6-7
 - searching 6-6
 - settings 6-6
 - uploading from a computer 6-7
 - Directory (screen) 6-6
 - Directory Numbers (setting) 2-24
 - Discussion mode (multipoint display) 3-10
 - Display Contacts (setting) 6-12
 - Display Content (setting) 3-4, 3-5, 3-8
 - Display Far Video (setting) 3-4, 3-5
 - Display Global Addresses (setting) 6-10
 - Display H.323 Extension (setting) 2-7
 - Display Icons in a Call (setting) 3-8
 - display modes, multipoint
 - auto 3-10
 - discussion 3-10
 - full screen 3-10
 - presentation 3-10
 - voice-activated switching 3-10
 - Display Name in Global Directory (setting) 6-10
 - Display Near Video (setting) 3-4, 3-5
 - Display Time in Call (setting) 6-2, 7-2
 - displays, *See also* monitors
 - DNS name
 - Global Directory Server 6-10
 - SIP proxy server 2-13, 2-15
 - SIP registrar server 2-13, 2-15
 - system 2-5
 - DNS Servers (setting) 2-5
 - Do Not Allow Previous Passwords (settings) 8-10
 - Do Not Disturb 7-5
 - Do Not Disturb (setting) 6-3
 - DoD DSN 8-2, 8-3
 - DoD DSN setting 8-7
 - DoD security banner 8-5
 - Domain (setting) 6-16, 9-10
 - Domain Name (setting) 2-5, 6-11
 - Domain User Name (setting) 6-12
 - SIP 2-12, 2-14
 - Download Logs 11-11
 - DSR signal polarity 2-28
 - DTMF tones 10-1
 - DTR Pulse Duration (setting) 2-28
 - DTR signal polarity 2-28
 - dual monitor emulation
 - configuring 3-9
 - description 3-9
 - Dual Monitor Emulation (setting) 3-4
 - Duplex Mode (setting) 2-5
 - DVD/VCR, *See* VCR/DVD
 - Dynamic Bandwidth 2-15
 - Dynamic Bandwidth (setting) 2-17, 3-22
 - dynamic management mode 9-8
- ## E
- E.164 alias 2-11
 - E.164 extension 2-7, 2-8, 2-10
 - EAP 2-6
 - echo cancellation
 - not compatible with StereoSurround 4-16
 - not compatible with Vortex mixer 4-16
 - Echo Canceller (setting) 4-16, 4-21
 - elapsed time, displaying 6-2, 7-2
 - Enable 802.1p/Q (setting) 2-6
 - Enable Basic Mode (setting) 12-2
 - Enable Broadcast Mode (setting) 2-29
 - Enable Built-In Microphones (setting) 4-14
 - Enable EAP/802.1X (setting) 2-6
 - Enable H.323 Trace (setting) 11-12
 - Enable H.460 Firewall Traversal (setting) 2-18
 - Enable IP H.323 (setting) 2-31
 - Enable ISDN H.320 (setting) 2-23, 2-25, 2-32
 - Enable ISDN Trace (setting) 11-12
 - Enable Keyboard Noise Reduction (setting) 4-15
 - Enable Live Music Mode (setting) 4-15
 - Enable Multipoint Trial (setting) 6-4
 - Enable PC LAN Port (setting) 2-6
 - Enable People+Content (setting) 2-29
 - Enable Phantom Power (setting) 4-16
 - Enable Polycom EagleEye View Microphones (setting) 4-15
 - Enable Polycom Microphones (setting) 4-14
 - Enable Polycom StereoSurround (setting) 4-19
 - Enable PVEC (setting) 2-16
 - Enable Remote Access (setting) 8-4
 - Enable RSVP (setting) 2-16
 - Enable Security Banner (setting) 8-5
 - Enable SIP (setting) 2-31
 - Enable SNMP (setting) 9-7
 - Enable V.35/RS-449/RS-530 (setting) 2-27
 - encryption
 - call statistics 11-3
 - enabling 8-4, 8-7
 - Enter IP Address Manually (setting) 2-3

error concealment 2-16
 extensions
 E.164 2-7, 2-8, 2-10
 entering on home screen 7-5
 H.323 2-7, 2-8, 2-10, 7-5
 External CSU (setting) 2-25
 external CSU cable length 2-25
 external IR sensor 10-4
 external speaker system, *See* speakers

F

factory restore 12-4
 Far Control of Near Camera (setting) 3-21
 far site
 allowing to control near camera 3-21
 system information (call statistics) 11-3
 Far Site Name Display Time (setting) 6-2
 Favorites 7-4
 favorites 6-12, 6-13, 6-14, 6-15
 Firewall (screen) 2-18
 firewall traversal, enabling 2-19
 firewalls
 configuring 2-18
 See also NAT and security
 Fixed Ports (setting) 2-18
 Folder Name (setting) 8-14
 Foreground Source (setting) 5-6
 Frame Rate (setting), for broadcasting 2-29
 Full Screen mode (multipoint display) 3-10

G

gatekeeper
 alternate 2-8
 IP address 2-8
 name 2-8
 specifying 2-8
 Gatekeeper (screen) 2-8
 Gatekeeper IP Address (setting) 2-8
 gateway
 call speed prefix/suffix 2-11
 calling through 2-35
 configuring to use 2-11
 default 2-3
 specifying number 2-10
 Gateway (screen) 2-10
 Gateway Number Type (setting) 2-11
 generating DTMF tones 10-1
 Global Address (setting) 2-4
 Global Directory 6-10, 6-11, 6-12

allowing system name to be displayed 6-10
 configuring to use 6-10, 6-11
 copying to local system 6-10
 displaying 6-10
 displaying addresses 2-18
 Global Directory (GDS) (setting) 6-10
 Global Directory Server
 DNS name 6-10
 IP address 6-10
 password 6-10
 registering to 6-10
 Global Directory Servers screen 6-10
 Global Management System
 account number, requiring 9-5
 account number, validating 9-5
 description 9-4
 management servers list 9-5
 requesting support from administrator 9-6
 Global Services, configuring 9-4
 Group Name (setting) 6-10, 6-11, 6-12
 groups
 directory 6-12, 6-13
 favorites 6-13

H

H.239 (setting) 2-31
 H.239, *See also* sharing content
 H.264 High Profile C-7
 H.320, *See* ISDN
 H.323
 enabling 2-31
 extension 2-7, 2-8, 2-10
 H.323 Extension (E.164) (setting) 2-7, 2-8, 2-10, 7-5
 H.323 Name (setting) 2-7, 2-8
 H.323 Settings (screen) 2-8
 H.323, *See also* IP
 H.331, *See* broadcast mode
 HD multipoint 3-11
 HD multipoint calls 3-27
 help
 from GMS administrator 9-5
 high profile (H.264) C-7
 high-definition video
 network readiness services 2-1
 receiving 3-26
 sending 3-26
 home screen
 customizing 7-3
 settings 7-5

- Home Screen Settings 7-4
- Home Screen Settings (screen) 7-5
- Horizontal Position (setting) 3-20, 3-21
- Host Name (setting) 2-5
- I**
- icons
 - camera 3-17, 3-18, 3-19, 3-20, 3-21, 7-7
 - displaying 3-8
- Identity (setting) 2-6
- Import Directory (utility) 6-7
- IMUX, *See* BRI network interface
- Incoming Video Call (setting) 4-14
- indicator lights, *See* lights
- initial system configuration 1-11
- input formats
 - audio 4-1, 4-2
 - video 3-14, 3-15, 3-16
- Input Type (dB meter) 4-17
- Input Type (setting) 4-16
- instructions, on-screen 7-6, 7-7, 9-4
- Interactive Touch Pad RS-232 mode 10-5
- internal CSU, output attenuation 2-25
- International Dialing Prefix (setting) 2-26, 7-1
- International ISDN Video Calls (setting) 2-34
- interoperability issues, resolving 12-2
- inverse multiplexer, *See* BRI network interface
- IP address
 - default gateway 2-3
 - displaying 7-5
 - DNS server 2-5
 - entering manually 2-3
 - gatekeeper 2-8
 - Global Directory Server 6-10
 - obtaining 2-3
 - SIP proxy server 2-13, 2-15
 - SIP registrar server 2-13, 2-15
 - SNMP network management workstation 9-7
- IP Address (IPv4) (setting) 2-3
- IP Address (setting) 2-3
- IP calls, enabling 2-31
- IP Gateway (setting) 2-32
- IP network, configuring 2-7-2-18
- IP precedence 2-16
- IPv4 2-3
- IPv6 2-4
- IR sensors, connecting to the system 10-4
- ISDN
 - BRI, configuring 2-23
 - calls, enabling 2-23, 2-25
 - channels dialed in parallel 2-23, 2-26
 - dialing prefix for outside line 2-25
 - enabling 2-32
 - line signaling protocol 2-25
 - network hardware requirements 2-20
 - numbers, displaying 7-5
 - PRI, activating/deactivating channels 2-26
 - PRI, configuring 2-25, 2-26
 - restore PRI defaults 2-26
 - SPIDs 2-23, 2-24
 - switch protocol 2-24, 2-25
 - voice-only calls, enabling 2-32
- ISDN (screen) 2-23, 2-25
- ISDN Gateway (setting) 2-32
- ISDN Switch Protocol (setting) 2-23
- ISDN Video Calls (H.320) (setting) 2-34
- ISDN Voice Algorithm (setting) 2-23, 2-25
- J**
- jitter (call statistics) 11-3
- K**
- keyboard noise reduction 4-15
- Keypad Audio Confirmation (setting) 10-1
- kiosk mode 7-3, 8-12
- L**
- LAN 2-2
 - configuring 2-3
 - connector A-8
 - status lights 2-2
- LAN port 2-6
- LAN Properties (screen) 2-3, 2-5
- LAN Speed (setting) 2-5
- Language (setting) 7-1
- Last Number Dialed (setting) 7-5
- LDAP 6-9, 6-14, 6-15, 9-8
- LDAP screen 6-11
- Level (setting) 4-16, 4-17
- lighting and backlight compensation 3-21
- lights
 - BRI network interface 2-21, 2-22
 - LAN status 2-2
 - microphone 4-9
 - power 1-7, 1-8, 1-9, 1-10
- Line Build Out (setting) 2-25
- Line In Level (dB meter) 4-18
- Line Out (dB meter) 4-17
- Line Out Level (dB meter) 4-18

- Line Output Mode (setting) 4-17
- Line Signaling (setting) 2-25
- Line Termination (read-only setting) 2-26
- Link-Local (setting) 2-4
- live music mode 4-15
- Local Date and Time (setting) 7-5
- Localized Name (setting) 6-8
- Localized System Name (setting) 6-6
- Location (screen) 2-24, 7-1
- Location Name (setting) 9-7
- location settings 7-1, 7-2
- Lock Account after Failed Logins (setting) 8-11
- Log Level (setting) 11-12
- Log Management screen 8-14
- logging 8-13, 8-14, 11-11
- login 8-3, 8-11
- logo, screen saver 7-8

- M**
- Mailbox (Primary SMTP) 6-17
- Management Servers (screen) 9-5
- Marquee 7-6
- Marquee (setting) 7-4
- marquee text 7-6
- Master Audio Volume (setting) 4-18
- maximum call duration 6-2
- Maximum Consecutive Repeated Characters (setting) 8-10
- Maximum Password Age in Days (setting) 8-10
- Maximum Receive Bandwidth (setting) 2-17
- Maximum Resolution C-9, C-10
- Maximum Resolution (setting) 2-32
- Maximum Speed for Receiving Calls (setting) 2-34
- Maximum Time in Call (setting) 6-2
- Maximum Transmission Unit Size (setting) 2-16
- Maximum Transmit Bandwidth (setting) 2-17
- meeting password 8-2
- messages
 - sending to call participants 9-4
- meters, audio 4-17, 4-18, 4-19, 4-20, 4-21
- MIBs, downloading 9-6
- microphones
 - configuring 4-14, 4-21
 - configuring for stereo 4-20
 - connecting 4-9
 - EagleEye View 4-3
 - enabling 4-14
 - lights 4-9
 - monaural operation 4-3
 - placement for stereo 4-8
 - positioning 4-3
 - positioning for stereo 4-12
 - stereo operation 4-3
 - supported cable configurations 4-4, 4-5, 4-6, 4-7
 - swapping right and left 4-20
- Microsoft 6-15
- Microsoft Exchange Server Address (setting) 6-16
- Microsoft Office Communications Server integration with Polycom HDX systems 2-13
- Microsoft Office Communications Server (setting) 2-13, 2-15
- Microsoft Office Communications Server 2007 6-9, 6-12
- Microsoft Outlook 6-16
- Minimum Changed Characters (setting) 8-10
- Minimum Length (setting) 8-9
- Minimum Password Age in Days (setting) 8-10
- mixed calls, allowing 6-2
- mixer, *See* Vortex mixer
- modem
 - configuring for closed captions 10-5
- Monitor 1 (setting) 3-3, 3-7
- Monitor 2 (setting) 3-5, 3-6, 3-7
- Monitor 3 (VCR/DVD) (setting) 3-6
- monitors
 - aspect ratio, specifying 3-3, 3-5, 3-6, 3-7
 - brightness adjustment 3-11
 - burn-in prevention 3-11, 3-12
 - color balance adjustment 3-12
 - configuring 3-3, 3-12
 - configuring for dual monitor emulation 3-9
 - connecting 3-1, 3-2
 - output formats 3-1, 3-2
 - screen saver output 3-4, 3-5, 3-7, 3-8
 - sharpness setting 3-11
 - specifying what to display 3-6, 3-7
 - video format, specifying 3-3, 3-5, 3-6, 3-7
- Monitors (screen) 3-3
- Motion (setting) 3-17, 3-18, 3-19, 3-20, 3-21
- mounting brackets, installing 1-3
- multipoint calls
 - cascaded 6-5
 - configuring 3-10
 - display mode 3-10
 - HD and SD 3-11, 3-27
 - option key 6-4

- trial mode 6-4
 - using PathNavigator 2-8, 2-9, 6-4
- Multipoint Mode (setting) 3-10
- Mute Auto-Answer Calls (setting) 4-14
- My Extension(setting) 7-5
- My Information (screen) 9-6
- My IP (setting) 7-5
- My ISDN (setting) 7-5
- My SIP (setting) 7-5

N

- name
 - camera 3-17, 3-18, 3-19, 3-20, 3-21, 7-7
 - DNS, system 2-5
 - H.323 2-7, 2-8
 - host 2-5
 - SIP 2-12, 2-14
 - system, displaying 7-5
 - system, in Simplified Chinese 6-6
 - system, setting 6-6
- Name (setting) 3-17, 3-18, 3-19, 3-20, 3-21
- NAT
 - configuring 2-18
 - Public (WAN) Address (setting) 2-18
 - UPnP certified 2-18
- NAT Configuration (setting) 2-18
- NAT is H.323 Compatible (setting) 2-18
- Near End Loop test 11-4
- network
 - configuring using the setup wizard 1-11
 - connectors A-8
 - HD readiness services 2-1
 - IP, configuring 2-7-2-18
 - preparing 2-1
- Network Address Translation. *See* NAT
- Network Dialing (screen) 2-33
- network hardware requirements
 - for BRI 2-20
 - for PRI 2-20
 - for serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530 2-20
- network interfaces 2-20
 - BRI 2-20
 - BRI, configuring 2-23, 2-24
 - BRI, lights 2-21, 2-22
 - connecting 2-21
 - PRI 2-20
 - PRI, configuring 2-25
 - serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530 2-20, 2-28, 2-29, 2-32
- Network Mode (read-only setting) 2-26
- NTLM Version (setting) 8-5

- null modem adapter 5-7
- Number (setting), gateway 2-10
- Number + Extension (setting) 2-11
- Number of Active Channels (read-only setting) 2-26
- Number of Digits in DID Number (setting) 2-11
- Number of Digits in Extension (setting) 2-11
- Number of ISDN Channels to Dial in Parallel (setting) 2-23, 2-26
- Numbering Plan (setting) 2-23, 2-26
- Numeric Keypad Function (setting) 10-1

O

- Obtain IP Address Automatically (setting) 2-3
- on-screen instructions, providing 7-6, 7-7, 9-4
- option key, multipoint 6-4
- options
 - multipoint calling 6-4
 - multipoint trial mode 6-4
 - People on Content 5-5
- Options (screen) 6-4
- output formats
 - audio 4-11
 - video 3-1, 3-2
- Output upon Screen Saver Activation (setting) 3-4, 3-5, 3-7, 3-8
- Outside Line Dialing Prefix (setting) 2-23, 2-25, 2-30

P

- packet loss (call statistics) 2-15, 11-3
- Parity (setting) 10-5
- Password (setting) 2-6, 6-11, 6-16, 9-10
- Password Expiration Warning in Days (setting) 8-10
- passwords
 - Global Directory 6-10
 - length 8-9
 - meeting, setting 8-2
 - password-protected screens 8-1
 - policies 8-9
 - provisioning service 9-10
 - remote access, setting and deleting 8-2
 - room, default 1-11
 - room, setting and deleting 1-11, 8-2, 8-11
 - Security Mode requirements 8-5
 - SIP authentication 2-12, 2-14
- PathNavigator, using for multipoint calls 2-8, 2-9, 6-4
- PC LAN port 2-6

- People On Content
 - configuring 5-5
 - People on Content
 - calibration screen 5-6
 - option key 5-5
 - overview 5-4
 - People Video Adjustment (setting) 3-8
 - People video source 3-18, 3-19, 3-20, 3-21
 - People+Content
 - enabling for H.331 broadcasting 2-29
 - People+Content IP
 - installing on a computer 5-4
 - requirements 5-4
 - supported resolutions 5-3
 - Percent Filled Threshold (setting) 8-14
 - Phase (setting) 3-20, 3-21
 - phone connector A-8
 - Phone Dialing Order (setting) 2-33
 - phone line, connecting 2-29
 - picture-in-picture, *See* PIP
 - PING test 11-4
 - PIP
 - configuring 3-4
 - displaying 3-4
 - Place a Call (screen), *See* home screen
 - Place a Call button 7-4
 - placing test calls 12-1
 - plasma monitors and burn-in prevention 3-11
 - plasma televisions 3-12
 - Play Reminder Tone (setting) 6-17
 - Polycom Annotation RS-232 mode 10-5
 - Polycom Conferencing for Microsoft Outlook 6-16
 - Polycom GDS 6-9, 6-12, 6-14
 - Polycom Microphone Type (dB meter) 4-19
 - ports
 - fixed, specifying 2-18
 - serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530 2-27
 - SIP proxy server 2-13, 2-15
 - SIP registrar server 2-13, 2-15
 - TCP and UDP, specifying 2-18
 - positioning
 - speakers, for stereo 4-12, 4-13
 - system 1-3, 1-5
 - POTS, *See* analog phone
 - power
 - connector A-8
 - indicator light 1-7, 1-8, 1-9, 1-10
 - switch 1-6, 1-7, 1-8, 1-9
 - Power Frequency (setting) 3-22
 - Preferred Dialing Method (setting) 2-33
 - Preferred Speed for Placing Calls (setting) 2-34
 - Preferred Speeds (screen) 2-34
 - prefix, gateway 2-11
 - presence states 6-14
 - Presentation mode (multipoint display) 3-10
 - presets, *See* camera presets
 - Preview Directory Entry Information (setting) 6-6
 - PRI Line Type (read-only setting) 2-26
 - PRI network interface
 - activating/deactivating channels 2-26
 - capabilities 2-20
 - configuring 2-25, 2-26
 - connecting to systems 2-20
 - hardware requirements 2-20
 - line signaling formats 2-25
 - restore defaults 2-26
 - PRI Video Number (setting) 2-25
 - Primary Camera (setting) 3-21
 - profiles
 - managing with Polycom HDX web interface 9-3
 - settings that are included 9-3
 - storing on a computer 9-3
 - uploading from a computer 9-4
 - protocol
 - ISDN line signaling 2-25
 - ISDN switch 2-23, 2-24, 2-25
 - transport, for SIP network 2-12, 2-14
 - Provisioning Service 9-8, 9-9
 - Proxy Server (setting) 2-13, 2-15
 - Pulse Width (setting) 2-29
 - PVEC (Polycom Video Error Concealment) 2-15, 2-16
- Q**
- Quality of Service 2-15
 - Quality of Service (screen) 2-16, 2-17
 - Quality Preference (setting) 3-22
- R**
- rack mounting brackets, installing 1-3
 - Read-Only Community (setting) 9-7
 - rear panel views A-1, A-5
 - Recent Calls
 - button 7-4
 - button on home screen 6-2
 - calls not listed 11-6

- list 6-2, 11-6
 - recent calls
 - See Call Detail Report (CDR)
 - recording calls 5-2
 - configuring audio 5-2
 - configuring video source 3-7
 - setting volume 4-18
 - while playing a VCR/DVD 4-18
 - refusing calls 6-3, 7-5
 - Register with Calendaring Service (setting) 6-16
 - registering with Global Directory Server 6-10
 - Registrar Server (setting) 2-15
 - Registration Status (setting) 6-12
 - Reminder Time in Minutes (setting) 6-17
 - remote access
 - enabling 8-4
 - Remote Access Password (setting) 8-2
 - remote control
 - channel ID 10-2
 - configuring 10-1
 - controlling a recording device 10-3
 - keypad audio confirmation 10-1
 - programming codes D-1
 - Remote Control (screen) 10-1
 - Remote Log Server (setting) 11-12
 - Remote Logging Enabled (setting) 11-12
 - remote management 1-11, 8-4
 - Require Login for System Access (setting) 8-3
 - Require Lower Case Letters (setting) 8-9
 - Require Numbers (setting) 8-9
 - Require Special Characters (setting) 8-9
 - Require Upper Case Letters (setting) 8-9
 - requirements
 - browser, for Polycom HDX web interface 1-11, 9-2
 - for People+Content IP 5-4
 - for using PathNavigator Conference On Demand 2-9
 - hardware, for BRI network 2-20
 - hardware, for PRI network 2-20
 - hardware, for serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530 network 2-20
 - resetting system defaults 11-6
 - resetting the system 12-2
 - Resolution (setting) 3-3, 3-5, 3-8
 - resolution, VGA, for People+Content IP 5-3
 - restart system
 - actions that cause 2-3, 2-5, 8-4, 8-5
 - restarting system 11-6
 - restore button 12-2
 - Restore Defaults (setting) 2-26
 - ring tones
 - setting 4-14
 - volume 4-14
 - room monitoring
 - enabling 8-4, 9-2
 - viewing a room or call 9-2
 - room password
 - default 1-11
 - screens that require 8-1
 - setting and deleting 1-11, 8-2, 8-11
 - Room Telephone Number (setting) 2-30
 - RS-232 Flow Control (setting) 10-5
 - RS-232 Mode (setting) 10-5
 - RS-232 serial port
 - configuring for a Vortex mixer 4-20
 - configuring for closed captions 5-7, 5-8
 - connectors A-8
 - data pass-through 10-5
 - equipment used with 10-3
 - RS-366 Dialing (setting) 2-27
 - RS-449, See serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530
 - RS-530, See serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530
 - RSVP (Resource Reservation Setup Protocol) 2-16
 - RT signal polarity 2-28
 - RTS signal polarity 2-28
- S**
- Save Global Directory to System (setting) 6-10
 - screen saver
 - logo 7-8
 - text 7-7
 - screen saver output
 - monitor 1 3-4, 3-5, 3-7, 3-8
 - Screen Saver Wait Time (setting) 3-8
 - SD multipoint 3-11
 - SD multipoint calls 3-27
 - Search (setting) 6-6
 - search button 6-6
 - security
 - allowing mixed calls 6-2
 - controlling remote access 8-4, 9-2
 - room monitoring 9-2
 - Security Mode setting 8-6
 - System screen access 7-5
 - systems outside firewalls 2-19
 - Security (screen) 8-2, 9-2
 - Security Mode

- enabling 8-6
- limitations 8-6
- Security Mode (setting) 8-2
- Security Profile (setting) 8-7
- Send a Message (screen, web interface) 9-4
- Send Content When PC Connects (setting) 3-22
- sensor, IR 10-4
- serial connectors A-8
- serial dialing 2-26
- Serial Port (screen) 5-7, 5-8, 10-5
- serial port, *See* RS-232 serial port
- serial V.35/RS-449/RS-530 network interface
 - call speed 2-27
 - calling profile 2-27
 - configuring 2-28, 2-29
 - configuring signal polarity 2-28
 - connecting 2-20
 - crypto resync pulse 2-28, 2-29
 - enabling 2-32
 - hardware requirements 2-20
- Server Address (address) 6-11
- Server Address (setting) 9-10
- Server Port (setting) 6-11
- Server Status (screen) 11-2
- setup wizard 1-11, 9-8
- sharing content
 - configuring display 5-3
 - enabling H.239 2-31
 - using People+Content IP 5-3
- Sharpness (setting) 3-17, 3-18, 3-19, 3-20, 3-21
- Show My Offline Contacts (setting) 6-12
- Show Private Meeting Information (setting) 6-17
- signal polarity
 - CTS 2-28
 - DCD 2-28
 - DSR 2-28
 - DTR 2-28
 - RT 2-28
 - RTS 2-28
 - ST 2-28
- SIP
 - address 2-12, 2-14
 - configuring 2-12, 2-13
 - enabling 2-12, 2-31
 - name 2-14
 - password 2-12, 2-14
 - proxy server 2-13, 2-15
 - registrar server 2-13, 2-15
 - restrictions 2-13
 - transport protocol 2-12, 2-14
 - user name 2-12
- SIP address
 - displaying 7-5
- SIP Registrar Server (setting) 2-13
- SIP Settings (screen) 2-12
- Site-Local (setting) 2-4
- siting considerations 1-4, 1-5, 4-3
- SNMP
 - access, controlling 8-4
 - conditions reported 9-6
 - configuring 9-7
 - downloading and installing MIB 9-6
- SNMP (screen) 9-7
- SNMP screen 9-7
- Software Update 9-11
- software update 9-10
- software, updating 9-10
- Sound Effects Volume (setting) 4-14
- Source (setting) 3-18, 3-19, 3-20, 3-21
- Speaker Test 4-13
- speakers
 - connecting 4-10
 - positioning for stereo 4-12, 4-13
 - testing 11-5
 - volume 4-13
- Specify with PIN (gatekeeper setting) 2-8
- Speed (setting) 2-27
- Speed Dial 7-4, 7-6
- speeds
 - call speeds and resolutions C-4
 - multipoint call C-1
 - point-to-point call C-1
- SPIDs
 - automatic configuration 2-23, 2-24
 - entering manually 2-24
- ST signal polarity 2-28
- Start Log Transfer 8-14
- statistics
 - call 11-3
 - content 11-3
- Stereo (setting) 4-19
- stereo audio
 - room layouts 4-8
- Stereo Settings (screen) 4-19
- StereoSurround
 - adjusting volume 4-20
 - autorotation setting 4-19
 - enabling 4-19
 - not compatible with echo cancellation 4-16
 - positioning microphones 4-12
 - positioning speakers 4-12, 4-13

- stereo setting 4-19
 - swapping microphones 4-20
 - testing 4-20
 - StereoSurround kit 4-12
 - Stop Bits (setting) 10-5
 - Storage Type (setting) 8-14
 - Subnet Mask (setting) 2-3
 - subwoofer, positioning 4-13
 - suffix, gateway 2-11
 - Switch Protocol (setting) 2-25
 - switch protocol, ISDN 2-23, 2-24
 - system
 - configuration, initial 1-11
 - name 2-7, 2-8
 - name, displaying 7-5
 - name, displaying in Simplified Chinese 6-6
 - positioning 1-3, 1-5
 - resetting 11-6
 - restarting 11-6
 - System (setting) 7-5
 - System Description (setting) 9-7
 - System Log Settings 11-11
 - System Name (setting) 6-6, 7-5
 - System Phone Number (setting) 2-30
 - system profiles
 - managing with Polycom HDX web interface 9-3
 - settings that are included 9-3
 - storing on a computer 9-3
 - uploading from a computer 9-4
 - System screen, allowing access 7-5
 - System Status (screen) 11-2
- T**
- TCP Ports (setting) 2-18
 - technical support
 - contacting 12-5
 - from GMS administrator 9-5, 9-6
 - web page address 12-5
 - Telephony (screen) 2-30
 - telephony, configuring 2-30
 - Telnet
 - access, controlling 8-4
 - using in Security Mode 8-7
 - Terminal Endpoint ID (read-only setting) 2-26
 - test calls 12-1
 - test calls, stereo 4-20
 - tests
 - audio meter 11-5
 - color bar 3-12, 11-4
 - speaker 11-5
 - time
 - daylight saving 7-1
 - displaying 7-5
 - elapsed, displaying 6-2, 7-2
 - setting 7-1
 - to display far site name 6-2
 - Time Between Pulses (setting) 2-29
 - Time Format (setting) 7-2
 - Time Server (setting) 7-2
 - Time Server Address (setting) 7-2
 - Time Zone (screen) 7-1
 - Time Zone (setting) 7-2
 - timeout 6-2
 - time-out, screen saver 3-8
 - tones 10-1
 - alert 4-14
 - DTMF 10-1
 - ring 4-14
 - touch tones 10-1
 - touch-panel control 10-4
 - configuring 10-5
 - Trace Route test 11-4
 - tracking calls 9-5
 - Transcoding (setting) 2-32
 - Transfer Frequency (setting) 8-14
 - transferring logs 8-14
 - Transport Protocol (setting) 2-12, 2-14
 - Trap Version (setting) 9-7
 - treble adjustment 4-18
 - troubleshooting test calls 12-1
 - Type of Service (setting) 2-16
 - Type of Service Value (setting) 2-16
- U**
- UDP Ports (setting) 2-18
 - updating software 9-10
 - Use Gatekeeper (setting) 2-8
 - Use Non-Polycom Remote (setting) 10-2
 - Use PathNavigator for Multipoint Calls (setting) 2-8
 - Use Room Password for Remote Access (setting) 8-2
 - Use RTS Signal for Resync Pulse (setting) 2-29
 - Use SSL (Secure Socket Layer) 6-11
 - User Account screen 8-11
 - User Alert Tones (setting) 4-14
 - User ID (setting) 8-3

- User Name (setting) 6-11, 6-12, 6-16
 - provisioning service 9-10
 - SIP 2-12, 2-14
 - User Password (setting) 8-3
 - User Remote Access Password (setting) 8-3
 - user settings
 - allowing access 8-5
 - backlight compensation 3-21
 - camera presets 3-25
 - far control of near camera 3-21
 - list 8-12
 - muting auto-answer calls 4-14
 - PIP 3-4
 - User Settings (screen) 8-5, 8-12
 - utilities
 - Call Detail Report 11-7, 11-10
 - Import Directory 6-7
 - Web Director (room monitoring) 9-2
- V**
- V.35 Ports Used (setting) 2-27
 - V.35/RS-449/RS-530 (screen) 2-27
 - V.35/RS-449/RS-530 (setting) 2-32
 - V.35/RS-449/RS-530 Serial Status (screen) 11-4
 - V.35/RS-449/RS-530, *See also* serial
 - V.35/RS-449/RS-530
 - VBP firewall traversal 2-19
 - VCR/DVD
 - configuring audio 5-2
 - connecting 5-1
 - controlling with remote control 10-3
 - playing videotapes in calls 5-1
 - recording calls 5-2
 - VCR/DVD (screen) 4-18
 - VCR/DVD Audio Out Always On (setting) 4-18
 - VCR/DVD In Level (setting) 4-18
 - VCR/DVD Out Level (setting) 4-18
 - VCR/DVD Record Source (setting) 3-7
 - Vertical Position (setting) 3-20, 3-21
 - VGA Input settings 3-21
 - VGA resolution for People+Content IP 5-3
 - video
 - brightness adjustment 3-11
 - color balance adjustment 3-12
 - data rate (call statistics) 11-3
 - error concealment 2-16
 - format, monitor 1 3-3
 - format, monitor 2 3-5, 3-6, 3-7
 - frame rate (call statistics) 11-3
 - input formats 3-14, 3-15, 3-16
 - inputs A-1
 - Motion setting 3-17, 3-18, 3-19, 3-20, 3-21
 - output formats 3-1, 3-2
 - outputs A-1
 - protocol (call statistics) 11-3
 - sharpness adjustment 3-11
 - sharpness setting 3-17, 3-18, 3-19, 3-20, 3-21
 - specifying bandwidth for People and Content 3-22
 - specifying what monitors display 3-6, 3-7
 - Video Diagnostics (screen) 11-4
 - Video Dialing Order (setting) 2-33
 - Video Format (setting) 3-3, 3-5, 3-7
 - Video Format (setting), for broadcasting 2-29
 - Video Priority (setting) 2-6
 - Video Protocol (setting), for broadcasting 2-29
 - Video Quality (setting) 3-17, 3-18, 3-19, 3-20, 3-21
 - video sources
 - connecting 3-14, 3-15, 3-16
 - VLAN ID (setting) 2-6
 - voice algorithm for ISDN 2-23, 2-25
 - Voice Over ISDN (setting) 2-32
 - voice-activated switching mode (multipoint display) 3-10
 - voice-only calls, enabling 2-31, 2-32
 - volume
 - audio line in 4-16
 - bass 4-18
 - for recording calls 4-18
 - master control 4-18
 - sound effects 4-14
 - speakers 4-13
 - treble 4-18
 - VCR/DVD playback 4-18
 - Vortex mixer
 - configuring 4-20, 10-5
 - not compatible with echo cancellation 4-16
 - VPN, configuring 2-18
- W**
- Web Access Port (setting) 8-4
 - web access, controlling 8-4
 - web browser
 - configuring to use Polycom HDX web interface 9-2
 - requirements 1-11
 - Web Director 8-4, 9-2
 - web interface
 - accessing 9-2

- accessing in Security Mode 8-7
- Call Detail Report, downloading 11-7
- Call Detail Report, downloading archives 11-10
- configuring browser 9-2
- managing directories 6-7
- managing system profiles 9-3
- providing closed captions 5-9
- room monitoring 8-4, 9-2
- sending messages to call participants 9-4
- system log, downloading 11-11
- White Balance (setting) 3-24
- wide-screen monitors, configuring 3-3, 3-5, 3-6, 3-7, 3-8

